

**STATEMENT OF ADDITIONAL INFORMATION**

**HIGH YIELD ETF**

**TICKER SYMBOL: HYLD**

**(THE “FUND”)**

**a series of EXCHANGE LISTED FUNDS TRUST (the “Trust”)**

**November 1, 2019**

Principal Listing Exchange for the Fund: NYSE Arca, Inc.

**Investment Adviser:**

**Exchange Traded Concepts, LLC**

**Sub-Advisers:**

**MacKay Shields LLC  
WhiteStar Asset Management LLC**

This Statement of Additional Information (“SAI”) is not a prospectus. The SAI should be read in conjunction with the Fund’s prospectus, dated November 1, 2019, as may be revised from time to time (the “Prospectus”). Capitalized terms used herein that are not defined have the same meaning as in the Prospectus, unless otherwise noted. The Fund’s audited financial statements for the fiscal year ended June 30, 2019 are contained in the 2019 Annual Report and incorporated by reference into this SAI. A copy of the Fund’s Annual or Semi-Annual Report or the Prospectus may be obtained without charge by writing the Fund’s distributor, Foreside Fund Services, LLC, at Three Canal Plaza, Suite 100, Portland, Maine 04101, by visiting the Fund’s website at [www.hyldefund.com](http://www.hyldefund.com), or by calling toll-free 844-880-3837.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

GENERAL INFORMATION ABOUT THE TRUST .....	1
INFORMATION ABOUT INVESTMENT POLICIES, PERMITTED INVESTMENTS, AND RELATED RISKS .....	1
INVESTMENT RESTRICTIONS .....	32
EXCHANGE LISTING AND TRADING .....	34
MANAGEMENT OF THE TRUST .....	35
CODES OF ETHICS .....	40
PROXY VOTING POLICIES .....	41
INVESTMENT ADVISORY AND OTHER SERVICES .....	41
THE PORTFOLIO MANAGERS .....	43
THE DISTRIBUTOR .....	44
THE ADMINISTRATORS .....	45
THE CUSTODIAN .....	45
THE TRANSFER AGENT .....	45
COMPLIANCE SERVICES .....	45
LEGAL COUNSEL .....	45
INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM .....	45
SECURITIES LENDING .....	46
PORTFOLIO HOLDINGS DISCLOSURE POLICIES AND PROCEDURES .....	47
DESCRIPTION OF SHARES .....	47
LIMITATION OF TRUSTEES' LIABILITY .....	47
BROKERAGE TRANSACTIONS .....	48
PORTFOLIO TURNOVER RATE .....	49
BOOK ENTRY ONLY SYSTEM .....	50
CONTROL PERSONS AND PRINCIPAL HOLDERS OF SECURITIES .....	51
PURCHASE AND REDEMPTION OF SHARES IN CREATION UNITS .....	51
DETERMINATION OF NET ASSET VALUE .....	58
DIVIDENDS AND DISTRIBUTIONS .....	58
FEDERAL INCOME TAXES .....	59
FINANCIAL STATEMENTS .....	66
APPENDIX A: DESCRIPTION OF SHORT-TERM RATINGS .....	A-1
APPENDIX B: PROXY VOTING POLICY AND PROCEDURES .....	B-1

## **GENERAL INFORMATION ABOUT THE TRUST**

The Trust (formerly, Exchange Traded Concepts Trust II) is an open-end management investment company consisting of multiple investment series. This SAI relates to the High Yield ETF (the “Fund”). The Trust was organized as a Delaware statutory trust on April 4, 2012. The Trust is registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (the “1940 Act”), as an open-end management investment company, and the offering of the Fund’s shares (“Shares”) is registered under the Securities Act of 1933 (the “Securities Act”). Exchange Traded Concepts, LLC (the “Adviser”) serves as the investment adviser to the Fund. MacKay Shields LLC (“MacKay Shields”) and WhiteStar Asset Management LLC (“WhiteStar”) (each, a “Sub-Adviser”, and together, the “Sub-Advisers”) serve as the sub-advisers to the Fund. The Fund seeks high current income with a secondary goal of capital appreciation.

On June 22, 2018, the Fund acquired all of the assets and liabilities of the AdvisorShares Peritus High Yield ETF (the “Predecessor Fund”), a series of AdvisorShares Trust, in exchange for shares of beneficial interest of the Fund (the “Reorganization”). As a result of the Reorganization, the Fund is the accounting successor of the Predecessor Fund. The Predecessor Fund was advised by another investment adviser and sub-advised by Peritus I Asset Management, LLC, a prior sub-adviser to the Fund. Effective September 4, 2018, the Fund changed its name from “Peritus High Yield ETF” to “High Yield ETF.”

The Fund offers and issues shares at their net asset value (“NAV”) only in aggregations of a specified number of shares (each, a “Creation Unit”). The Fund generally offers and issues shares in exchange for a basket of securities closely approximating the holdings of the Fund (“Deposit Securities”) together with the deposit of a specified cash payment (“Cash Component”). The Trust reserves the right to permit or require the substitution of a “cash in lieu” amount (“Deposit Cash”) to be added to the Cash Component to replace any Deposit Security. The Fund’s shares are listed on the NYSE Arca, Inc. (the “Exchange”) and trade on the Exchange at market prices. These prices may differ from the shares’ NAV per share. The Fund’s shares are also redeemable only in Creation Unit aggregations, and generally in exchange for portfolio securities and a specified cash payment. A Creation Unit of the Fund consists of at least 50,000 shares.

## **INFORMATION ABOUT INVESTMENT POLICIES, PERMITTED INVESTMENTS, AND RELATED RISKS**

The Fund’s principal investment strategies and principal risks are described in the Prospectus.

An investment in the Fund should be made with an understanding that the value of the Fund’s portfolio securities may fluctuate in accordance with changes in the financial condition of the issuers of the portfolio securities, the value of securities generally and other factors.

An investment in the Fund should also be made with an understanding of the risks inherent in an investment in securities, including the risk that the financial condition of issuers may become impaired or that the general condition of the securities markets may deteriorate (either of which may cause a decrease in the value of the portfolio securities and thus in the value of shares of the Fund). Securities are susceptible to general market fluctuations and to volatile increases and decreases in value as market confidence in and perceptions of their issuers change. These investor perceptions are based on various and unpredictable factors including expectations regarding government, economic, monetary and fiscal policies, inflation and interest rates, economic expansion or contraction, and global or regional political, economic and banking crises.

The following are descriptions of the Fund’s investment practices and permitted investments and the associated risk factors. The Fund will only engage in the following investment practices and invest in the following instruments if such practice or investment is consistent with the Fund’s investment objective and permitted by the Fund’s stated investment policies.

### **DIVERSIFICATION**

The Fund is classified as a diversified investment company under the 1940 Act.

## EQUITY SECURITIES

Equity securities represent ownership interests in a company. Investments in equity securities in general are subject to market risks that may cause their prices to fluctuate over time. Fluctuations in the value of equity securities in which the Fund invests will cause the NAV of the Fund to fluctuate.

*Common Stocks.* Common stocks represent units of ownership in a company. Common stocks usually carry voting rights and earn dividends. Unlike preferred stocks, which are described below, dividends on common stocks are not fixed but are declared at the discretion of the company's board of directors. Holders of common stocks incur more risk than holders of preferred stocks and debt obligations because common stockholders, as owners of the issuer, have generally inferior rights to receive payments from the issuer in comparison with the rights of creditors of, or holders of debt obligations or preferred stocks issued by, the issuer. Further, unlike debt securities which typically have a stated principal amount payable at maturity (whose value, however, will be subject to market fluctuations prior thereto), or preferred stocks which typically have a liquidation preference and which may have stated optional or mandatory redemption provisions, common stocks have neither a fixed principal amount nor a maturity. Common stock values are subject to market fluctuations as long as the common stock remains outstanding.

*Preferred Stocks.* Preferred stocks are also units of ownership in a company. Preferred stocks normally have preference over common stock in the payment of dividends and the liquidation of the company. However, in all other respects, preferred stocks are subordinated to the liabilities of the issuer. Unlike common stocks, preferred stocks are generally not entitled to vote on corporate matters. Types of preferred stocks include adjustable-rate preferred stock, fixed dividend preferred stock, perpetual preferred stock, and sinking fund preferred stock. Generally, the market value of preferred stock with a fixed dividend rate and no conversion element varies inversely with interest rates and perceived credit risk.

*Convertible Securities.* Convertible securities are securities that may be exchanged for, converted into, or exercised to acquire a predetermined number of shares of the issuer's common stock at a fund's option during a specified time period (such as convertible preferred stocks, convertible debentures and warrants). A convertible security is generally a fixed income security that is senior to common stock in an issuer's capital structure, but is usually subordinated to similar non-convertible securities. In exchange for the conversion feature, many corporations will pay a lower rate of interest on convertible securities than debt securities of the same corporation. In general, the market value of a convertible security is at least the higher of its "investment value" (*i.e.*, its value as a fixed income security) or its "conversion value" (*i.e.*, its value upon conversion into its underlying common stock).

*Master Limited Partnerships ("MLPs").* MLPs are limited partnerships in which the ownership units are publicly traded. MLP units are registered with the SEC and are freely traded on a securities exchange or in the over-the-counter market. MLPs often own several properties or businesses (or own interests) that are related to real estate development and oil and gas industries, but they also may finance motion pictures, research and development and other projects. Generally, an MLP is operated under the supervision of one or more managing general partners. Limited partners are not involved in the day-to-day management of the partnership.

The risks of investing in an MLP are generally those involved in investing in a partnership as opposed to a corporation. For example, state law governing partnerships is often less restrictive than state law governing corporations. Accordingly, there may be fewer protections afforded investors in an MLP than investors in a corporation. Additional risks involved with investing in an MLP are risks associated with the specific industry or industries in which the partnership invests, such as the risks of investing in real estate, or the oil and gas industries.

Convertible securities are subject to the same risks as similar securities without the convertible feature. The price of a convertible security is more volatile during times of steady interest rates than other types of debt securities. The price of a convertible security tends to increase as the market value of the underlying stock rises, whereas it tends to decrease as the market value of the underlying common stock declines.

*Rights and Warrants.* A right is a privilege granted to existing shareholders of a corporation to subscribe to shares of a new issue of common stock before it is issued. Rights normally have a short life of usually two to four weeks, are freely transferable and entitle the holder to buy the new common stock at a lower price than the public offering price. Warrants

are securities that are usually issued together with a debt security or preferred stock and that give the holder the right to buy proportionate amount of common stock at a specified price. Warrants are freely transferable and are traded on major exchanges. Unlike rights, warrants normally have a life that is measured in years and entitles the holder to buy common stock of a company at a price that is usually higher than the market price at the time the warrant is issued. Corporations often issue warrants to make the accompanying debt security more attractive.

An investment in warrants and rights may entail greater risks than certain other types of investments. Generally, rights and warrants do not carry the right to receive dividends or exercise voting rights with respect to the underlying securities, and they do not represent any rights in the assets of the issuer. In addition, their value does not necessarily change with the value of the underlying securities, and they cease to have value if they are not exercised on or before their expiration date. Investing in rights and warrants increases the potential profit or loss to be realized from the investment as compared with investing the same amount in the underlying securities.

*General Risks of Investing in Stocks.* While investing in stocks allows investors to participate in the benefits of owning a company, such investors must accept the risks of ownership. Unlike bondholders, who have preference to a company's earnings and cash flow, preferred stockholders, followed by common stockholders in order of priority, are entitled only to the residual amount after a company meets its other obligations. For this reason, the value of a company's stock will usually react more strongly to actual or perceived changes in the company's financial condition or prospects than its debt obligations. Stockholders of a company that fares poorly can lose money.

Stock markets tend to move in cycles with short or extended periods of rising and falling stock prices. The value of a company's stock may fall because of:

- Factors that directly relate to that company, such as decisions made by its management or lower demand for the company's products or services;
- Factors affecting an entire industry, such as increases in production costs; and
- Changes in general financial market conditions that are relatively unrelated to the company or its industry, such as changes in interest rates, currency exchange rates or inflation rates.

Because preferred stock is generally junior to debt securities and other obligations of the issuer, deterioration in the credit quality of the issuer will cause greater changes in the value of a preferred stock than in a more senior debt security with similar stated yield characteristics.

*Small- and Medium-Sized Companies.* Investors in small- and medium-sized companies typically take on greater risk and price volatility than they would by investing in larger, more established companies. This increased risk may be due to the greater business risks of their small or medium size, limited markets and financial resources, narrow product lines and frequent lack of management depth. The securities of small- and medium-sized companies are often traded in the over-the-counter market and might not be traded in volumes typical of securities traded on a national securities exchange. Thus, the securities of small and medium capitalization companies are likely to be less liquid, and subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements, than securities of larger, more established companies.

*Large-Sized Companies.* Investments in large capitalization companies may go in and out of favor based on market and economic conditions and may underperform other market segments. Some large capitalization companies may be unable to respond quickly to new competitive challenges, such as changes in technology and consumer tastes, and may not be able to attain the high growth rate of successful smaller companies, especially during extended periods of economic expansion. As such, returns on investments in stocks of large capitalization companies could trail the returns on investments in stocks of small and mid-capitalization companies.

*When-Issued Securities.* A when-issued security is one whose terms are available and for which a market exists, but which has not been issued. When the Fund engages in when-issued transactions, it relies on the other party to consummate the sale. If the other party fails to complete the sale, the Fund may miss the opportunity to obtain the security at a favorable price or yield.

When purchasing a security on a when-issued basis, the Fund assumes the rights and risks of ownership of the security, including the risk of price and yield changes. At the time of settlement, the market value of the security may be more or less than the purchase price. The yield available in the market when the delivery takes place also may be higher than those obtained in the transaction itself. Because the Fund does not pay for the security until the delivery date, these risks are in addition to the risks associated with its other investments.

The Fund will segregate cash or liquid securities equal in value to commitments for the when-issued transactions. The Fund will segregate additional liquid assets daily so that the value of such assets is equal to the amount of the commitments.

## FOREIGN SECURITIES

*Foreign Issuers.* The Fund may invest in securities of issuers located outside the United States directly, or in financial instruments that are indirectly linked to the performance of foreign issuers. Examples of such financial instruments include depositary receipts, which are described further below, “ordinary shares,” and “New York shares” issued and traded in the United States. Ordinary shares are shares of foreign issuers that are traded abroad and on a United States exchange. New York shares are shares that a foreign issuer has allocated for trading in the United States. American Depositary Receipts (“ADRs”), ordinary shares, and New York shares all may be purchased with and sold for U.S. dollars, which protects the Fund from the foreign settlement risks described below.

Investing in foreign companies may involve risks not typically associated with investing in United States companies. The U.S. dollar value of securities of foreign issuers and of distributions in foreign currencies from such securities, can change significantly when foreign currencies strengthen or weaken relative to the U.S. dollar. Foreign securities markets generally have less trading volume and less liquidity than United States markets, and prices in some foreign markets can be very volatile compared to those of domestic securities. Therefore, the Fund’s investment in foreign securities may be less liquid and subject to more rapid and erratic price movements than comparable securities listed for trading on U.S. exchanges. Non-U.S. equity securities may trade at price/earnings multiples higher than comparable U.S. securities and such levels may not be sustainable. There may be less government supervision and regulation of foreign stock exchanges, brokers, banks and listed companies abroad than in the U.S. Moreover, settlement practices for transactions in foreign markets may differ from those in U.S. markets. Such differences may include delays beyond periods customary in the U.S. and practices, such as delivery of securities prior to receipt of payment, which increase the likelihood of a failed settlement, which can result in losses to the Fund. The value of non-U.S. investments and the investment income derived from them may also be affected unfavorably by changes in currency exchange control regulations. Foreign brokerage commissions, custodial expenses and other fees are also generally higher than for securities traded in the U.S. This may cause the Fund to incur higher portfolio transaction costs than domestic equity funds. Fluctuations in exchange rates may also affect the earning power and asset value of the foreign entity issuing a security, even one denominated in U.S. dollars. Dividend and interest payments may be repatriated based on the exchange rate at the time of disbursement, and restrictions on capital flows may be imposed. Many foreign countries lack uniform accounting, auditing and financial reporting standards comparable to those that apply to United States companies, and it may be more difficult to obtain reliable information regarding a foreign issuer’s financial condition and operations. In addition, the costs of foreign investing, including withholding taxes, brokerage commissions, and custodial fees, generally are higher than for United States investments.

Investing in companies located abroad carries political and economic risks distinct from those associated with investing in companies located in the United States. Foreign investment may be affected by actions of foreign governments adverse to the interests of United States investors, including the possibility of expropriation or nationalization of assets, confiscatory taxation, restrictions on United States investment, or on the ability to repatriate assets or to convert currency into U.S. dollars. There may be a greater possibility of default by foreign governments or foreign-government sponsored enterprises. Losses and other expenses may be incurred in converting between various currencies in connection with purchases and sales of foreign securities. Investments in foreign countries also involve a risk of local political, economic, or social instability, military action or unrest, or adverse diplomatic developments.

Investing in companies domiciled in emerging market countries may be subject to greater risks than investments in developed countries. These risks include: (i) less social, political, and economic stability; (ii) greater illiquidity and price volatility due to smaller or limited local capital markets for such securities, or low or non-existent trading volumes; (iii) foreign exchanges and broker-dealers may be subject to less scrutiny and regulation by local authorities; (iv) local

governments may decide to seize or confiscate securities held by foreign investors and/or local governments may decide to suspend or limit an issuer's ability to make dividend or interest payments; (v) local governments may limit or entirely restrict repatriation of invested capital, profits, and dividends; (vi) capital gains may be subject to local taxation, including on a retroactive basis; (vii) issuers facing restrictions on dollar or euro payments imposed by local governments may attempt to make dividend or interest payments to foreign investors in the local currency; (viii) investors may experience difficulty in enforcing legal claims related to the securities and/or local judges may favor the interests of the issuer over those of foreign investors; (ix) bankruptcy judgments may only be permitted to be paid in the local currency; (x) limited public information regarding the issuer may result in greater difficulty in determining market valuations of the securities, and (xi) lax financial reporting on a regular basis, substandard disclosure, and differences in accounting standards may make it difficult to ascertain the financial health of an issuer.

*Depository Receipts.* The Fund's investment in securities of foreign companies may be in the form of depository receipts or other securities convertible into securities of foreign issuers. ADRs are dollar-denominated receipts representing interests in the securities of a foreign issuer, which securities may not necessarily be denominated in the same currency as the securities into which they may be converted. ADRs are receipts typically issued by United States banks and trust companies which evidence ownership of underlying securities issued by a foreign corporation. Generally, ADRs in registered form are designed for use in domestic securities markets and are traded on exchanges or over-the-counter in the United States. American Depositary Shares (ADSs) are U.S. dollar-denominated equity shares of a foreign-based company available for purchase on an American stock exchange. ADSs are issued by depository banks in the United States under an agreement with the foreign issuer, and the entire issuance is called an ADR and the individual shares are referred to as ADSs. Global Depositary Receipts ("GDRs"), European Depositary Receipts ("EDRs"), and International Depositary Receipts ("IDRs") are similar to ADRs in that they are certificates evidencing ownership of shares of a foreign issuer, however, GDRs, EDRs, and IDRs may be issued in bearer form and denominated in other currencies, and are generally designed for use in specific or multiple securities markets outside the U.S. EDRs, for example, are designed for use in European securities markets while GDRs are designed for use throughout the world. Depository receipts will not necessarily be denominated in the same currency as their underlying securities.

All Depository Receipts generally must be sponsored. However, the Fund may invest in unsponsored Depository Receipts under certain limited circumstances. The issuers of unsponsored Depository Receipts are not obligated to disclose material information in the United States, and, therefore, there may be less information available regarding such issuers and there may not be a correlation between such information and the market value of the Depository Receipts.

## CURRENCY TRANSACTIONS

*Foreign Currencies.* The Fund may invest directly and indirectly in foreign currencies. The Fund may conduct foreign currency transactions on a spot (*i.e.*, cash) or forward basis (*i.e.*, by entering into forward contracts to purchase or sell foreign currencies). Currency transactions made on a spot basis are for cash at the spot rate prevailing in the currency exchange market for buying or selling currency. Although foreign exchange dealers generally do not charge a fee for such conversions, they do realize a profit based on the difference between the prices at which they are buying and selling various currencies. Thus, a dealer may offer to sell a foreign currency at one rate, while offering a lesser rate of exchange should the counterparty desire to resell that currency to the dealer. When used for hedging purposes, forward currency contracts tend to limit any potential gain that may be realized if the value of the Fund's foreign holdings increases because of currency fluctuations.

Investments in foreign currencies are subject to numerous risks, not the least of which is the fluctuation of foreign currency exchange rates with respect to the U.S. dollar. Exchange rates fluctuate for a number of reasons.

- **Inflation.** Exchange rates change to reflect changes in a currency's buying power. Different countries experience different inflation rates due to different monetary and fiscal policies, different product and labor market conditions, and a host of other factors.
- **Trade Deficits.** Countries with trade deficits tend to experience a depreciating currency. Inflation may be the cause of a trade deficit, making a country's goods more expensive and less competitive and so reducing demand for its currency.

- **Interest Rates.** High interest rates may raise currency values in the short term by making such currencies more attractive to investors. However, since high interest rates are often the result of high inflation, long-term results may be the opposite.
- **Budget Deficits and Low Savings Rates.** Countries that run large budget deficits and save little of their national income tend to suffer a depreciating currency because they are forced to borrow abroad to finance their deficits. Payments of interest on this debt can inundate the currency markets with the currency of the debtor nation. Budget deficits also can indirectly contribute to currency depreciation if a government chooses inflationary measures to cope with its deficits and debts.
- **Political Factors.** Political instability in a country can cause a currency to depreciate. Demand for a certain currency may fall if a country appears a less desirable place in which to invest and do business.
- **Government Control.** Through their own buying and selling of currencies, the world's central banks sometimes manipulate exchange rate movements. In addition, governments occasionally issue statements to influence people's expectations about the direction of exchange rates, or they may instigate policies with an exchange rate target as the goal. The value of the Fund's investments is calculated in U.S. dollars each day that the New York Stock Exchange ("NYSE") is open for business. As a result, to the extent that the Fund's assets are invested in instruments denominated in foreign currencies and the currencies appreciate relative to the U.S. dollar, the Fund's NAV as expressed in U.S. dollars (and, therefore, the value of your investment) should increase. If the U.S. dollar appreciates relative to the other currencies, the opposite should occur. The currency-related gains and losses experienced by the Fund will be based on changes in the value of portfolio securities attributable to currency fluctuations only in relation to the original purchase price of such securities as stated in U.S. dollars. Gains or losses on shares of the Fund will be based on changes attributable to fluctuations in the NAV of such shares, expressed in U.S. dollars, in relation to the original U.S. dollar purchase price of the shares. The amount of appreciation or depreciation in the Fund's assets also will be affected by the net investment income generated by the money market instruments in which the Fund invests and by changes in the value of the securities that are unrelated to changes in currency exchange rates.

The Fund may incur currency exchange costs when it sells instruments denominated in one currency and buys instruments denominated in another.

*Currency-Related Derivatives and Other Financial Instruments.* Although the Fund does not currently expect to engage in currency hedging, the Fund may use currency transactions in order to hedge the value of portfolio holdings denominated in particular currencies against fluctuations in relative value. Currency transactions include forward currency contracts, exchange-listed currency futures and options thereon, exchange-listed and over-the-counter ("OTC") options on currencies, and currency swaps. A forward currency contract involves a privately negotiated obligation to purchase or sell (with delivery generally required) a specific currency at a future date, which may be any fixed number of days from the date of the contract agreed upon by the parties, at a price set at the time of the contract. These contracts are traded in the interbank market conducted directly between currency traders (usually large, commercial banks) and their customers. A forward foreign currency contract generally has no deposit requirement, and no commissions are charged at any stage for trades. A currency swap is an agreement to exchange cash flows based on the notional difference among two or more currencies and operates similarly to an interest rate swap, which is described below. the Fund may enter into currency transactions with counterparties which have received (or the guarantors of the obligations of which have received) a short-term credit rating of A-1 or P-1 by S&P or Moody's, respectively, or that have an equivalent rating from a Nationally Recognized Statistical Rating Organization ("NRSRO") or (except for OTC currency options) are determined to be of equivalent credit quality by the Adviser.

The Fund's dealings in forward currency contracts and other currency transactions such as futures, options on futures, options on currencies and swaps will be limited to hedging involving either specific transactions ("Transaction Hedging") or portfolio positions ("Position Hedging"). Transaction Hedging is entering into a currency transaction with respect to specific assets or liabilities of the Fund, which will generally arise in connection with the purchase or sale of its portfolio securities or the receipt of income therefrom. The Fund may enter into Transaction Hedging out of a desire to preserve the

U.S. dollar price of a security when it enters into a contract for the purchase or sale of a security denominated in a foreign currency. The Fund may be able to protect itself against possible losses resulting from changes in the relationship between the U.S. dollar and foreign currencies during the period between the date the security is purchased or sold and the date on which payment is made or received by entering into a forward contract for the purchase or sale, for a fixed amount of dollars, of the amount of the foreign currency involved in the underlying security transactions.

Position Hedging is entering into a currency transaction with respect to portfolio security positions denominated or generally quoted in that currency. The Fund uses Position Hedging when the Adviser or a Sub-Adviser believes that the currency of a particular foreign country may suffer a substantial decline against the U.S. dollar. The Fund may enter into a forward foreign currency contract to sell, for a fixed amount of dollars, the amount of foreign currency approximating the value of some or all of its portfolio securities denominated in such foreign currency. The precise matching of the forward foreign currency contract amount and the value of the portfolio securities involved may not have a perfect correlation since the future value of the securities hedged will change as a consequence of the market between the date the forward contract is entered into and the date it matures. The projection of short-term currency market movement is difficult, and the successful execution of this short-term hedging strategy is uncertain.

The Fund will not enter into a transaction to hedge currency exposure to an extent greater, after netting all transactions intended wholly or partially to offset other transactions, than the aggregate market value (at the time of entering into the transaction) of the securities held in its portfolio that are denominated or generally quoted in or currently convertible into such currency, other than with respect to Proxy Hedging as described below.

The Fund may also cross-hedge currencies by entering into transactions to purchase or sell one or more currencies that are expected to decline in value relative to other currencies to which the Fund has or expects to have portfolio exposure.

To reduce the effect of currency fluctuations on the value of existing or anticipated holdings of portfolio securities, the Fund may also engage in Proxy Hedging. Proxy hedging is often used when the currency to which a fund's portfolio is exposed is difficult to hedge or to hedge against the dollar. Proxy hedging entails entering into a forward contract to sell a currency whose changes in value are generally considered to be linked to a currency or currencies in which some or all of a fund's portfolio securities are or are expected to be denominated, and to buy U.S. dollars. The amount of the contract would not exceed the value of the fund's securities denominated in linked currencies. For example, if the Adviser or a Sub-Adviser considers that the Swedish krona is linked to the euro, the Fund holds securities denominated in krona and the Adviser or a Sub-Adviser believes that the value of the krona will decline against the U.S. dollar, the Adviser or a Sub-Adviser may enter into a contract to sell euros and buy dollars.

Currency hedging involves some of the same risks and considerations as other transactions with similar instruments. Currency transactions can result in losses to the Fund if the currency being hedged fluctuates in value to a degree or in a direction that is not anticipated. Furthermore, there is risk that the perceived linkage between various currencies may not be present or may not be present during the particular time that the Fund is engaging in Proxy Hedging. If the Fund in which it invests enters into a currency hedging transaction, the Fund will "cover" its position so as not to create a "senior security" as defined in Section 18 of the 1940 Act.

Currency transactions are subject to risks different from those of other portfolio transactions. Because currency control is of great importance to the issuing governments and influences economic planning and policy, purchase and sales of currency and related instruments can be negatively affected by government exchange controls, blockages, and manipulations or exchange restrictions imposed by governments. These actions can result in losses to the Fund if it is unable to deliver or receive currency or funds in settlement of obligations and could also cause hedges it has entered into to be rendered useless, resulting in full currency exposure as well as incurring transaction costs. Buyers and sellers of currency futures are subject to the same risks that apply to the use of futures generally. Furthermore, settlement of a currency futures contract for the purchase of most currencies must occur at a bank based in the issuing nation. Trading options on currency futures is relatively new, and the ability to establish and close out positions on such options is subject to the maintenance of a liquid market, which may not always be available. Currency exchange rates may fluctuate based on factors extrinsic to that country's economy. Although forward foreign currency contracts and currency futures tend to minimize the risk of loss due to a decline in the value of the hedged currency, at the same time they tend to limit any potential gain which might result should the value of such currency increase.

The Fund may also buy or sell put and call options on foreign currencies either on exchanges or in the OTC market. A put option on a foreign currency gives the purchaser of the option the right to sell a foreign currency at the exercise price until the option expires. A call option on a foreign currency gives the purchaser of the option the right to purchase the currency at the exercise price until the option expires. Currency options traded on U.S. or other exchanges may be subject to position limits which may limit the ability of the Fund to reduce foreign currency risk using such options. OTC options differ from exchange-traded options in that they are two-party contracts with price and other terms negotiated between the buyer and seller, and generally do not have as much market liquidity as exchange-traded options.

The Fund is not required to enter into forward currency contracts for hedging purposes and it is possible that the Fund may not be able to hedge against a currency devaluation that is so generally anticipated that the Fund is unable to contract to sell the currency at a price above the devaluation level it anticipates. It also is possible that, under certain circumstances, the Fund may have to limit its currency transactions to qualify as a regulated investment company (RIC) under the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Internal Revenue Code").

## REPURCHASE AGREEMENTS

The Fund may invest in repurchase agreements with commercial banks, brokers or dealers to generate income from its excess cash balances and to invest securities lending cash collateral. A repurchase agreement is an agreement under which the Fund acquires a financial instrument (*e.g.*, a security issued by the U.S. Government or an agency thereof, a banker's acceptance or a certificate of deposit) from a seller, subject to resale to the seller at an agreed upon price and date (normally, the next Business Day). A repurchase agreement may be considered a loan collateralized by securities. The resale price reflects an agreed upon interest rate effective for the period the instrument is held by the Fund and is unrelated to the interest rate on the underlying instrument.

In these repurchase agreement transactions, the securities acquired by the Fund (including accrued interest earned thereon) must have a total value in excess of the value of the repurchase agreement and are held by the Custodian until repurchased. No more than an aggregate of 15% of the Fund's net assets will be invested in illiquid securities, including repurchase agreements having maturities longer than seven days and securities subject to legal or contractual restrictions on resale, or for which there are no readily available market quotations.

The use of repurchase agreements involves certain risks. For example, if the other party to the agreement defaults on its obligation to repurchase the underlying security at a time when the value of the security has declined, the Fund may incur a loss upon disposition of the security. If the other party to the agreement becomes insolvent and subject to liquidation or reorganization under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code or other laws, a court may determine that the underlying security is collateral for a loan by the Fund not within the control of the Fund and, therefore, the Fund may not be able to substantiate its interest in the underlying security and may be deemed an unsecured creditor of the other party to the agreement.

## FIXED INCOME SECURITIES

The Fund may invest in fixed income securities. The market value of fixed income investments will change in response to interest rate changes and other factors. During periods of falling interest rates, the values of outstanding fixed income securities generally rise. Conversely, during periods of rising interest rates, the values of such securities generally decline. Moreover, while securities with longer maturities tend to produce higher yields, the prices of longer maturity securities are also subject to greater market fluctuations as a result of changes in interest rates. Changes by recognized agencies in the rating of any fixed income security and in the ability of an issuer to make payments of interest and principal also affect the value of these investments. Changes in the value of these securities will not necessarily affect cash income derived from these securities but will affect an investing Fund's NAV. Additional information regarding fixed income securities is described below.

- *Duration.* Duration is a measure of the expected change in value of a fixed income security for a given change in interest rates. For example, if interest rates changed by one percent, the value of a security having an effective duration of two years generally would vary by two percent. Duration takes the length of the time intervals between the present time and time that the interest and principal payments are scheduled, or in the case of a callable bond,

expected to be received, and weighs them by the present values of the cash to be received at each future point in time.

- *Creditor Liability and Participation on Creditors Committees.* Generally, when a fund holds bonds or other similar fixed income securities of an issuer, the fund becomes a creditor of the issuer. If the Fund is a creditor of an issuer it, may be subject to challenges related to the securities that it holds, either in connection with the bankruptcy of the issuer or in connection with another action brought by other creditors of the issuer, shareholders of the issuer or the issuer itself. The Fund may from time to time participate on committees formed by creditors to negotiate with the management of financially troubled issuers of securities held by the Fund. Such participation may subject the Fund to expenses such as legal fees and may make the Fund an “insider” of the issuer for purposes of the federal securities laws, and therefore may restrict the Fund’s ability to trade in or acquire additional positions in a particular security when it might otherwise desire to do so. Participation by the Fund on such committees also may expose the Fund to potential liabilities under the federal bankruptcy laws or other laws governing the rights of creditors and debtors. The Fund will participate on such committees only when the Adviser or Sub-Advisers believe that such participation is necessary or desirable to enforce the Fund’s rights as a creditor or to protect the value of securities held by the Fund. Further, the Adviser or Sub-Advisers have the authority to represent the Fund on creditors committees or similar committees and generally with respect to challenges related to the securities held by the Fund relating to the bankruptcy of an issuer or in connection with another action brought by other creditors of the issuer, shareholders of the issuer or the issuer itself.
- *Variable and Floating Rate Securities.* Variable and floating rate instruments involve certain obligations that may carry variable or floating rates of interest, and may involve a conditional or unconditional demand feature. Such instruments bear interest at rates which are not fixed, but which vary with changes in specified market rates or indices. The interest rates on these securities may be reset daily, weekly, quarterly, or some other reset period, and may have a set floor or ceiling on interest rate changes. There is a risk that the current interest rate on such obligations may not accurately reflect existing market interest rates. A demand instrument with a demand notice exceeding seven days may be considered illiquid if there is no secondary market for such security.
- *Bank Obligations.* Bank obligations may include certificates of deposit, bankers’ acceptances, and fixed time deposits. Certificates of deposit are negotiable certificates issued against funds deposited in a commercial bank for a definite period of time and earning a specified return. Bankers’ acceptances are negotiable drafts or bills of exchange, normally drawn by an importer or exporter to pay for specific merchandise, which are “accepted” by a bank, meaning, in effect, that the bank unconditionally agrees to pay the face value of the instrument on maturity. Fixed time deposits are bank obligations payable at a stated maturity date and bearing interest at a fixed rate. Fixed time deposits may be withdrawn on demand by the investor, but may be subject to early withdrawal penalties which vary depending upon market conditions and the remaining maturity of the obligation. There are no contractual restrictions on the right to transfer a beneficial interest in a fixed time deposit to a third-party, although there is no market for such deposits. The Fund will not invest in fixed time deposits which (1) are not subject to prepayment or (2) provide for withdrawal penalties upon prepayment (other than overnight deposits) if, in the aggregate, more than 15% of its net assets would be invested in such deposits, repurchase agreements with remaining maturities of more than seven days and other illiquid assets. Subject to the Trust’s limitation on concentration, as described in the “Investment Restrictions” section below, there is no limitation on the amount of the Fund’s assets which may be invested in obligations of foreign banks which meet the conditions set forth herein.

Obligations of foreign banks involve somewhat different investment risks than those affecting obligations of U.S. banks, including the possibilities that their liquidity could be impaired because of future political and economic developments, that their obligations may be less marketable than comparable obligations of U.S. banks, that a foreign jurisdiction might impose withholding taxes on interest income payable on those obligations, that foreign deposits may be seized or nationalized, that foreign governmental restrictions such as exchange controls may be adopted which might adversely affect the payment of principal and interest on those obligations and that the selection of those obligations may be more difficult because there may be less publicly available information concerning foreign banks or the accounting, auditing and financial reporting standards, practices and requirements

applicable to foreign banks may differ from those applicable to United States banks. Foreign banks are not generally subject to examination by any United States Government agency or instrumentality.

*Debt Securities.* Fixed income securities are debt securities. A debt security is a security consisting of a certificate or other evidence of a debt (secured or unsecured) on which the issuing company or governmental body promises to pay the holder thereof a fixed, variable, or floating rate of interest for a specified length of time, and to repay the debt on the specified maturity date, as discussed above. Some debt securities, such as zero coupon bonds, do not make regular interest payments but are issued at a discount to their principal or maturity value. Debt securities include a variety of fixed income obligations, including, but not limited to, corporate debt securities, government securities, municipal securities, convertible securities, and mortgage-backed securities. Debt securities include investment-grade securities, non-investment-grade securities, and unrated securities. Debt securities are subject to a variety of risks, such as interest rate risk, income risk, call/prepayment risk, inflation risk, credit risk, and currency risk.

- *Corporate Debt Securities.* The Fund intends to invest in corporate debt securities representative of one or more high yield bond or credit derivative indices, which may change from time to time. Selection will generally be dependent on independent credit analysis or fundamental analysis performed by the Sub-Advisers. The Fund may invest in all grades of corporate debt securities, including below investment-grade securities, as discussed below. See Appendix A for a description of corporate bond ratings. The Fund also may invest in unrated securities.

Corporate debt securities are typically fixed-income securities issued by businesses to finance their operations. Notes, bonds, debentures and commercial paper are the most common types of corporate debt securities. The primary differences between the different types of corporate debt securities are their maturities and secured or unsecured status. Commercial paper has the shortest term and is usually unsecured. The broad category of corporate debt securities includes debt issued by domestic or foreign companies of all kinds, including those with small-, mid- and large-capitalizations. Corporate debt may be rated investment-grade or below investment-grade and may carry variable or floating rates of interest.

Because of the wide range of types, and maturities, of corporate debt securities, as well as the range of creditworthiness of its issuers, corporate debt securities have widely varying potentials for return and risk profiles. For example, commercial paper issued by a large established domestic corporation that is rated investment-grade may have a modest return on principal, but carries relatively limited risk. On the other hand, a long-term corporate note issued by a small foreign corporation from an emerging market country that has not been rated may have the potential for relatively large returns on principal, but carries a relatively high degree of risk.

Corporate debt securities carry both credit risk and interest rate risk. Credit risk is the risk that a fund could lose money if the issuer of a corporate debt security is unable to pay interest or repay principal when it is due. Some corporate debt securities that are rated below investment-grade are generally considered speculative because they present a greater risk of loss, including default, than higher quality debt securities. The credit risk of a particular issuer's debt security may vary based on its priority for repayment. For example, higher ranking (senior) debt securities have a higher priority than lower-ranking (subordinated) securities. This means that the issuer might not make payments on subordinated securities while continuing to make payments on senior securities. In addition, in the event of bankruptcy, holders of higher-ranking senior securities may receive amounts otherwise payable to the holders of more junior securities. Interest rate risk is the risk that the value of certain corporate debt securities will tend to fall when interest rates rise. In general, corporate debt securities with longer terms tend to fall more in value when interest rates rise than corporate debt securities with shorter terms.

- *Below Investment-Grade Debt Securities.* The Fund intends to invest in below investment-grade securities. Below investment-grade securities, also referred to as "high yield securities" or "junk bonds," are debt securities that are rated lower than the four highest rating categories by a nationally recognized statistical rating organization (for example, lower than Baa3 by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. or ("Moody's") lower than BBB- by Standard & Poor's ("S&P")) or are determined to be of comparable quality by the Sub-Advisers. These securities are generally considered to be, on balance, predominantly speculative with respect to capacity to pay interest and repay principal in accordance with the terms of the obligation, and will generally involve more credit risk than securities in the

investment-grade categories. Investment in these securities generally provides greater income and increased opportunity for capital appreciation than investments in higher quality securities, but they also typically entail greater price volatility and principal and income risk.

Analysis of the creditworthiness of issuers of high yield securities may be more complex than for issuers of investment-grade securities. Thus, reliance on credit ratings in making investment decisions entails greater risks for high yield securities than for investment-grade debt securities. The success of a fund's advisor in managing high yield securities is more dependent upon its own credit analysis than is the case with investment-grade securities.

Some high yield securities are issued by smaller, less-seasoned companies, while others are issued as part of a corporate restructuring, such as an acquisition, merger, or leveraged buyout. Companies that issue high yield securities are often highly leveraged and may not have available to them more traditional methods of financing. Therefore, the risk associated with acquiring the securities of such issuers generally is greater than is the case with investment-grade securities. Some high yield securities were once rated as investment-grade but have been downgraded to junk bond status because of financial difficulties experienced by their issuers.

The market values of high yield securities tend to reflect individual issuer developments to a greater extent than do investment-grade securities, which in general react to fluctuations in the general level of interest rates. High yield securities also tend to be more sensitive to economic conditions than are investment-grade securities. A projection of an economic downturn or of a period of rising interest rates, for example, could cause a decline in junk bond prices because the advent of a recession could lessen the ability of a highly leveraged company to make principal and interest payments on its debt securities. If an issuer of high yield securities defaults, in addition to risking payment of all or a portion of interest and principal, a fund investing in such securities may incur additional expenses to seek recovery.

The secondary market on which high yield securities are traded may be less liquid than the market for investment-grade securities. Less liquidity in the secondary trading market could adversely affect the ability of a fund to sell a high yield security or the price at which a fund could sell a high yield security, and could adversely affect the daily NAV of fund shares. When secondary markets for high yield securities are less liquid than the market for investment-grade securities, it may be more difficult to value the securities because such valuation may require more research, and elements of judgment may play a greater role in the valuation because there is less reliable, objective data available.

The Fund will not necessarily dispose of a security if a credit-rating agency downgrades the rating of the security below its rating at the time of purchase. However, the Sub-Advisers will monitor the investment to determine whether continued investment in the security is in the best interest of shareholders.

- *Unrated Debt Securities.* The Fund intends to invest in unrated debt securities. Unrated debt, while not necessarily lower in quality than rated securities, may not have as broad a market. Because of the size and perceived demand for the issue, among other factors, certain issuers may decide not to pay the cost of getting a rating for their bonds. The creditworthiness of the issuer, as well as any financial institution or other party responsible for payments on the security, will be analyzed to determine whether to purchase unrated bonds.
- *Commercial Paper.* The Fund intends to invest in commercial paper. Commercial paper is a short-term obligation with a maturity ranging from one to 270 days issued by banks, corporations and other borrowers. Such investments are unsecured and usually discounted. The Fund may invest in commercial paper rated A-1 or A-2 by S&P or Prime-1 or Prime-2 by Moody's.
- *Inflation-Indexed Bonds.* The Fund may invest in inflation-indexed bonds, which are fixed income securities whose principal value is periodically adjusted according to the rate of inflation. Two structures are common. The U.S. Treasury and some other issuers use a structure that accrues inflation into the principal value of the bond. Most other issuers pay out the Consumer Price Index ("CPI") accruals as part of a semiannual coupon.

Inflation-indexed securities issued by the U.S. Treasury have maturities of five, ten or thirty years, although it is possible that securities with other maturities will be issued in the future. U.S. Treasury securities pay interest on a semi-annual basis, equal to a fixed percentage of the inflation-adjusted principal amount. For example, if the Fund purchased an inflation-indexed bond with a par value of \$1,000 and a 3% real rate of return coupon (payable 1.5% semi-annually), and inflation over the first six months was 1%, the mid-year par value of the bond would be \$1,010 and the first semi-annual interest payment would be \$15.15 (\$1,010 times 1.5%). If inflation during the second half of the year resulted in the whole years' inflation equaling 3%, the end-of-year par value of the bond would be \$1,030 and the second semi-annual interest payment would be \$15.45 (\$1,030 times 1.5%).

If the periodic adjustment rate measuring inflation falls, the principal value of inflation-indexed bonds will be adjusted downward, and consequently the interest payable on these securities (calculated with respect to a smaller principal amount) will be reduced. Repayment of the original bond principal upon maturity (as adjusted for inflation) is guaranteed in the case of U.S. Treasury inflation-indexed bonds, even during a period of deflation. However, the current market value of the bonds is not guaranteed, and will fluctuate. The Fund also may invest in other inflation related bonds which may or may not provide a similar guarantee. If a guarantee of principal is not provided, the adjusted principal value of the bond repaid at maturity may be less than the original principal.

The value of inflation-indexed bonds is expected to change in response to changes in real interest rates. Real interest rates are tied to the relationship between nominal interest rates and the rate of inflation. Therefore, if inflation were to rise at a faster rate than nominal interest rates, real interest rates might decline, leading to an increase in value of inflation-indexed bonds. In contrast, if nominal interest rates increased at a faster rate than inflation, real interest rates might rise, leading to a decrease in value of inflation-indexed bonds.

While these securities are expected to be protected from long-term inflationary trends, short-term increases in inflation may lead to a decline in value. If interest rates rise due to reasons other than inflation (for example, due to changes in currency exchange rates), investors in these securities may not be protected to the extent that the increase is not reflected in the bond's inflation measure.

The periodic adjustment of U.S. inflation-indexed bonds is tied to the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers ("CPI-U"), which is calculated monthly by the U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics. The CPI-U is a measurement of changes in the cost of living, made up of components such as housing, food, transportation and energy. Inflation-indexed bonds issued by a foreign government are generally adjusted to reflect a comparable inflation index, calculated by that government. There can be no assurance that the CPI-U or any foreign inflation index will accurately measure the real rate of inflation in the prices of goods and services. Moreover, there can be no assurance that the rate of inflation in a foreign country will be correlated to the rate of inflation in the United States.

Any increase in the principal amount of an inflation-indexed bond will be considered taxable ordinary income, even though investors do not receive their principal until maturity.

## MORTGAGE-RELATED SECURITIES

The Fund intends to invest in mortgage-related and asset-backed securities. Mortgage-related securities are interests in pools of residential or commercial mortgage loans, including mortgage loans made by savings and loan institutions, mortgage bankers, commercial banks and others. Pools of mortgage loans are assembled as securities for sale to investors by various governmental, government-related and private organizations. See "Mortgage Pass-Through Securities." The Fund also may invest in debt securities which are secured with collateral consisting of mortgage-related securities (see "Collateralized Mortgage Obligations").

The 2008 financial downturn, particularly the increase in delinquencies and defaults on residential mortgages, falling home prices, and unemployment, adversely affected the market for mortgage-related securities. In addition, various market and governmental actions may impair the ability to foreclose on or exercise other remedies against underlying mortgage holders, or may reduce the amount received upon foreclosure. These factors have caused certain mortgage-related securities to experience lower valuations and reduced liquidity. There is also no assurance that the U.S. Government will take action to

support the mortgage-related securities industry, as it has in the past, should the economy experience another downturn. Further, future government actions may significantly alter the manner in which the mortgage-related securities market functions. Each of these factors could ultimately increase the risk that the Fund could realize losses on mortgage-related securities.

*Mortgage Pass-Through Securities.* The Fund may invest in mortgage pass-through securities. Interests in pools of mortgage-related securities differ from other forms of debt securities, which normally provide for periodic payment of interest in fixed amounts with principal payments at maturity or specified call dates. Instead, these securities provide a monthly payment which consists of both interest and principal payments. In effect, these payments are a “pass-through” of the monthly payments made by the individual borrowers on their residential or commercial mortgage loans, net of any fees paid to the issuer or guarantor of such securities. Additional payments are caused by repayments of principal resulting from the sale of the underlying property, refinancing or foreclosure, net of fees or costs which may be incurred. Some mortgage-related securities (such as securities issued by the Government National Mortgage Association (“Ginnie Mae”)) are described as “modified pass-through.” These securities entitle the holder to receive all interest and principal payments owed on the mortgage pool, net of certain fees, at the scheduled payment dates regardless of whether or not the mortgagor actually makes the payment.

The rate of pre-payments on underlying mortgages will affect the price and volatility of a mortgage-related security, and may have the effect of shortening or extending the effective duration of the security relative to what was anticipated at the time of purchase. To the extent that unanticipated rates of pre-payment on underlying mortgages increase the effective duration of a mortgage-related security, the volatility of such security can be expected to increase. The residential mortgage market in the United States recently has experienced difficulties that may adversely affect the performance and market value of certain of the Fund’s mortgage-related investments. Delinquencies and losses on residential mortgage loans (especially subprime and second-lien mortgage loans) generally have increased recently and may continue to increase, and a decline in or flattening of housing values (as has recently been experienced and may continue to be experienced in many housing markets) may exacerbate such delinquencies and losses. Borrowers with adjustable rate mortgage loans are more sensitive to changes in interest rates, which affect their monthly mortgage payments, and may be unable to secure replacement mortgages at comparably low interest rates. Also, a number of residential mortgage loan originators have experienced serious financial difficulties or bankruptcy. Owing largely to the foregoing, reduced investor demand for mortgage loans and mortgage-related securities and increased investor yield requirements have caused limited liquidity in the secondary market for certain mortgage-related securities, which can adversely affect the market value of mortgage-related securities. It is possible that such limited liquidity in such secondary markets could continue or worsen.

*Agency Mortgage-Related Securities.* The Fund may invest in agency mortgage-related securities. The principal governmental guarantor of mortgage-related securities is Ginnie Mae. Ginnie Mae is a wholly owned United States government corporation within the Department of Housing and Urban Development. Ginnie Mae is authorized to guarantee, with the full faith and credit of the United States government, the timely payment of principal and interest on securities issued by institutions approved by Ginnie Mae (such as savings and loan institutions, commercial banks and mortgage bankers) and backed by pools of mortgages insured by the Federal Housing Administration (the “FHA”), or guaranteed by the Department of Veterans Affairs (the “VA”).

Government-related guarantors (*i.e.*, not backed by the full faith and credit of the United States government) include the Federal National Mortgage Association (“Fannie Mae”) and Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation (“Freddie Mac”). Fannie Mae is a government-sponsored corporation. Fannie Mae purchases conventional (*i.e.*, not insured or guaranteed by any government agency) residential mortgages from a list of approved seller/servicers which include state and federally chartered savings and loan associations, mutual savings banks, commercial banks and credit unions and mortgage bankers. Pass-through securities issued by Fannie Mae are guaranteed as to timely payment of principal and interest by Fannie Mae, but are not backed by the full faith and credit of the United States government. Freddie Mac was created by Congress in 1970 for the purpose of increasing the availability of mortgage credit for residential housing. It is a government-sponsored corporation that issues Participation Certificates (“PCs”), which are pass-through securities, each representing an undivided interest in a pool of residential mortgages. Freddie Mac guarantees the timely payment of interest and ultimate collection of principal, but PCs are not backed by the full faith and credit of the United States government.

On September 6, 2008, the Federal Housing Finance Agency (“FHFA”) placed Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac into conservatorship. As the conservator, FHFA succeeded to all rights, titles, powers and privileges of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac and of any stockholder, officer or director of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac with respect to Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac and the assets of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac. FHFA selected a new chief executive officer and chairman of the board of directors for each of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac.

In connection with the conservatorship, the U.S. Treasury entered into a Senior Preferred Stock Purchase Agreement with each of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac pursuant to which the U.S. Treasury will purchase a limited amount of each of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac to maintain a positive net worth in each enterprise. The SPAs contain various covenants that severely limit each enterprise’s operations. In exchange for entering into these agreements, the U.S. Treasury received \$1 billion of each enterprise’s senior preferred stock and warrants to purchase 79.9% of each enterprise’s common stock. Please see “U.S. Government Securities” for additional information on these agreements.

Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac are continuing to operate as going concerns while in conservatorship and each remain liable for all of its obligations, including its guaranty obligations, associated with its mortgage-backed securities. The FHFA has indicated that the conservatorship of each enterprise will end when the director of FHFA determines that FHFA’s plan to restore the enterprise to a safe and solvent condition has been completed.

Under the Federal Housing Finance Regulatory Reform Act of 2008 (the “Reform Act”), which was included as part of the Housing and Economic Recovery Act of 2008, FHFA, as conservator or receiver, has the power to repudiate any contract entered into by Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac prior to FHFA’s appointment as conservator or receiver, as applicable, if FHFA determines, in its sole discretion, that performance of the contract is burdensome and that repudiation of the contract promotes the orderly administration of Fannie Mae’s or Freddie Mac’s affairs. The Reform Act requires FHFA to exercise its right to repudiate any contract within a reasonable period of time after its appointment as conservator or receiver.

FHFA, in its capacity as conservator, has indicated that it has no intention to repudiate the guaranty obligations of Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac because FHFA views repudiation as incompatible with the goals of the conservatorship. However, in the event that FHFA, as conservator or if it is later appointed as receiver for Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac, were to repudiate any such guaranty obligation, the conservatorship or receivership estate, as applicable, would be liable for actual direct compensatory damages in accordance with the provisions of the Reform Act. Any such liability could be satisfied only to the extent of Fannie Mae’s or Freddie Mac’s assets available therefor.

In the event of repudiation, the payments of interest to holders of Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac mortgage-backed securities would be reduced if payments on the mortgage loans represented in the mortgage loan groups related to such mortgage-backed securities are not made by the borrowers or advanced by the servicer. Any actual direct compensatory damages for repudiating these guaranty obligations may not be sufficient to offset any shortfalls experienced by such mortgage-backed security holders.

Further, in its capacity as conservator or receiver, FHFA has the right to transfer or sell any asset or liability of Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac without any approval, assignment or consent. Although FHFA has stated that it has no present intention to do so, if FHFA, as conservator or receiver, were to transfer any such guaranty obligation to another party, holders of Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac mortgage-backed securities would have to rely on that party for satisfaction of the guaranty obligation and would be exposed to the credit risk of that party.

In addition, certain rights provided to holders of mortgage-backed securities issued by Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac under the operative documents related to such securities may not be enforced against FHFA, or enforcement of such rights may be delayed, during the conservatorship or any future receivership. The operative documents for Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac mortgage-backed securities may provide (or with respect to securities issued prior to the date of the appointment of the conservator may have provided) that upon the occurrence of an event of default on the part of Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac, in its capacity as guarantor, which includes the appointment of a conservator or receiver, holders of such mortgage-backed securities have the right to replace Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac as trustee if the requisite percentage of mortgage-backed securities holders consent. The Reform Act prevents mortgage-backed security holders from enforcing such rights if the event of default arises solely because a conservator or receiver has been appointed. The Reform Act also provides that no person may exercise any right or power to terminate, accelerate or declare an event of default under certain contracts to

which Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac is a party, or obtain possession of or exercise control over any property of Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac, or affect any contractual rights of Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac, without the approval of FHFA, as conservator or receiver, for a period of 45 or 90 days following the appointment of FHFA as conservator or receiver, respectively.

In addition, in a February 2011 report to Congress from the Treasury Department and the Department of Housing and Urban Development, the Obama administration provided a plan to reform America's housing finance market. The plan would reduce the role of and eventually eliminate Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac. Notably, the plan does not propose similar significant changes to Ginnie Mae, which guarantees payments on mortgage-related securities backed by federally insured or guaranteed loans such as those issued by the Federal Housing Association or guaranteed by the Department of Veterans Affairs. The report also identified three proposals for Congress and the administration to consider for the long-term structure of the housing finance markets after the elimination of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac, including implementing (i) a privatized system of housing finance that limits government insurance to very limited groups of creditworthy low- and moderate-income borrowers, (ii) a privatized system with a government backstop mechanism that would allow the government to insure a larger share of the housing finance market during a future housing crisis, and (iii) a privatized system where the government would offer reinsurance to holders of certain highly-rated mortgage-related securities insured by private insurers and would pay out under the reinsurance arrangements only if the private mortgage insurers were insolvent.

*Privately Issued Mortgage-Related Securities.* The Fund may invest in privately issued mortgage-related securities. Commercial banks, savings and loan institutions, private mortgage insurance companies, mortgage bankers and other secondary market issuers also create pass-through pools of conventional residential mortgage loans. Such issuers may be the originators and/or servicers of the underlying mortgage loans as well as the guarantors of the mortgage-related securities. Pools created by such non-governmental issuers generally offer a higher rate of interest than government and government-related pools because there are no direct or indirect government or agency guarantees of payments in the former pools. However, timely payment of interest and principal of these pools may be supported by various forms of insurance or guarantees, including individual loan, title, pool and hazard insurance and letters of credit, which may be issued by governmental entities or private insurers. Such insurance and guarantees and the creditworthiness of the issuers thereof will be considered in determining whether a mortgage-related security meets the Trust's investment quality standards. There can be no assurance that insurers or guarantors can meet their obligations under the insurance policies or guarantee arrangements. The Fund may buy mortgage-related securities without insurance or guarantees if, through an examination of the loan experience and practices of the originators/servicers and poolers, the Sub-Advisers determine that the securities meet the Trust's quality standards. Securities issued by certain private organizations may not be readily marketable. The Fund will not purchase mortgage-related securities or any other assets which, in the Sub-Advisers' opinion, are illiquid if, as a result, more than 15% of the Fund's net assets will be invested in illiquid securities.

Privately issued mortgage-related securities are not subject to the same underwriting requirements for the underlying mortgages that are applicable to those mortgage-related securities that have a government or government-sponsored entity guarantee. As a result, the mortgage loans underlying privately issued mortgage-related securities may, and frequently do, have less favorable collateral, credit risk or other underwriting characteristics than government or government-sponsored mortgage-related securities and have wider variances in a number of terms including interest rate, term, size, purpose and borrower characteristics. Mortgage pools underlying privately issued mortgage-related securities more frequently include second mortgages, high loan-to-value ratio mortgages and manufactured housing loans, in addition to commercial mortgages and other types of mortgages where a government or government-sponsored entity guarantee is not available. The coupon rates and maturities of the underlying mortgage loans in a privately-issued mortgage-related securities pool may vary to a greater extent than those included in a government guaranteed pool, and the pool may include subprime mortgage loans. Subprime loans are loans made to borrowers with weakened credit histories or with a lower capacity to make timely payments on their loans. For these reasons, the loans underlying these securities have had in many cases higher default rates than those loans that meet government underwriting requirements.

The risk of non-payment is greater for mortgage-related securities that are backed by loans that were originated under weak underwriting standards, including loans made to borrowers with limited means to make repayment. A level of risk exists for all loans, although, historically, the poorest performing loans have been those classified as subprime. Other types of privately issued mortgage-related securities, such as those classified as pay-option adjustable rate or Alt-A, have also performed poorly. Even loans classified as prime have experienced higher levels of delinquencies and defaults. The

substantial decline in real property values across the U.S. has exacerbated the level of losses that investors in privately issued mortgage-related securities have experienced. It is not certain when these trends may reverse. Market factors that may adversely affect mortgage loan repayment include adverse economic conditions, unemployment, a decline in the value of real property, or an increase in interest rates.

Privately issued mortgage-related securities are not traded on an exchange and there may be a limited market for the securities, especially when there is a perceived weakness in the mortgage and real estate market sectors. Without an active trading market, mortgage-related securities held in the Fund's portfolio may be particularly difficult to value because of the complexities involved in assessing the value of the underlying mortgage loans.

The Fund may purchase privately issued mortgage-related securities that are originated, packaged and serviced by third-party entities. It is possible these third-parties could have interests that are in conflict with the holders of mortgage-related securities, and such holders (such as the Fund) could have rights against the third parties or their affiliates. For example, if a loan originator, servicer or its affiliates engaged in negligence or willful misconduct in carrying out its duties, then a holder of the mortgage-related security could seek recourse against the originator/servicer or its affiliates, as applicable. Also, as a loan originator/servicer, the originator/servicer or its affiliates may make certain representations and warranties regarding the quality of the mortgages and properties underlying a mortgage-related security. If one or more of those representations or warranties is false, then the holders of the mortgage-related securities could trigger an obligation of the originator/servicer or its affiliates, as applicable, to repurchase the mortgages from the issuing trust. Notwithstanding the foregoing, many of the third-parties that are legally bound by trust and other documents have failed to perform their respective duties, as stipulated in such trust and other documents, and investors have had limited success in enforcing terms.

Mortgage-related securities that are issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies or instrumentalities are not subject to the Fund's industry concentration restrictions, set forth below under "Investment Restrictions," by virtue of the exclusion from that test available to all U.S. government securities. In the case of privately issued mortgage-related securities, the Fund takes the position that mortgage-related securities do not represent interests in any particular "industry" or group of industries. Therefore, the Fund may invest more or less than 25% of its total assets in privately issued mortgage-related securities. The assets underlying such securities may be represented by a portfolio of residential or commercial mortgages (including both whole mortgage loans and mortgage participation interests that may be senior or junior in terms of priority of repayment) or portfolios of mortgage pass-through securities issued or guaranteed by Ginnie Mae, Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac. Mortgage loans underlying a mortgage-related security may in turn be insured or guaranteed by the FHA or the VA. In the case of privately issued mortgage-related securities whose underlying assets are neither U.S. government securities nor U.S. Government-insured mortgages, to the extent that real properties securing such assets may be located in the same geographical region, the security may be subject to a greater risk of default than other comparable securities in the event of adverse economic, political or business developments that may affect such region and, ultimately, the ability of residential homeowners to make payments of principal and interest on the underlying mortgages.

The Sub-Advisers seek to manage the portion of the Fund's assets committed to privately issued mortgage-related securities in a manner consistent with the Fund's investment objective, policies and overall portfolio risk profile. In determining whether and how much to invest in privately issued mortgage-related securities, and how to allocate those assets, the Sub-Advisers will consider a number of factors. These include, but are not limited to (1) the nature of the borrowers (*e.g.*, residential vs. commercial), (2) the collateral loan type (*e.g.*, for residential: First Lien – Jumbo/Prime, First Lien – Alt-A, First Lien – Subprime, First Lien – Pay-Option or Second Lien; for commercial: Conduit, Large Loan or Single Asset / Single Borrower), and (3) in the case of residential loans, whether they are fixed rate or adjustable mortgages. Each of these criteria can cause privately issued mortgage-related securities to have differing primary economic characteristics and distinguishable risk factors and performance characteristics.

*Collateralized Mortgage Obligations ("CMOs").* The Fund and certain of the underlying ETPs may invest in CMOs, which are debt obligations of a legal entity that are collateralized by mortgages and divided into classes. Similar to a bond, interest and prepaid principal is paid, in most cases, on a monthly basis. CMOs may be collateralized by whole mortgage loans or private mortgage bonds, but are more typically collateralized by portfolios of mortgage pass-through securities guaranteed by Ginnie Mae, Freddie Mac, or Fannie Mae, and their income streams.

CMOs are structured into multiple classes, often referred to as “tranches,” with each class bearing a different stated maturity and entitled to a different schedule for payments of principal and interest, including pre-payments. Actual maturity and average life will depend upon the pre-payment experience of the collateral. In the case of certain CMOs (known as “sequential pay” CMOs), payments of principal received from the pool of underlying mortgages, including pre-payments, are applied to the classes of CMOs in the order of their respective final distribution dates. Thus, no payment of principal will be made to any class of sequential pay CMOs until all other classes having an earlier final distribution date have been paid in full.

In a typical CMO transaction, a corporation (“issuer”) issues multiple series (*e.g.*, A, B, C, Z) of CMO bonds (“Bonds”). Proceeds of the Bond offering are used to purchase mortgages or mortgage pass-through certificates (“Collateral”). The Collateral is pledged to a third-party trustee as security for the Bonds. Principal and interest payments from the Collateral are used to pay principal on the Bonds in the order A, B, C, Z. The Series A, B, and C Bonds all bear current interest. Interest on the Series Z Bond is accrued and added to principal and a like amount is paid as principal on the Series A, B, or C Bond currently being paid off. When the Series A, B, and C Bonds are paid in full, interest and principal on the Series Z Bond begins to be paid currently. CMOs may be less liquid and may exhibit greater price volatility than other types of mortgage- or asset-backed securities.

As CMOs have evolved, some classes of CMO bonds have become more common. For example, the Fund may invest in parallel-pay and planned amortization class (“PAC”) CMOs and multi-class pass-through certificates. Parallel-pay CMOs and multi-class pass-through certificates are structured to provide payments of principal on each payment date to more than one class. These simultaneous payments are taken into account in calculating the stated maturity date or final distribution date of each class, which, as with other CMO and multi-class pass-through structures, must be retired by its stated maturity date or final distribution date but may be retired earlier. PACs generally require payments of a specified amount of principal on each payment date. PACs are parallel-pay CMOs with the required principal amount on such securities having the highest priority after interest has been paid to all classes. Any CMO or multi-class pass-through structure that includes PAC securities must also have support tranches-known as support bonds, companion bonds or non-PAC bonds which lend or absorb principal cash flows to allow the PAC securities to maintain their stated maturities and final distribution dates within a range of actual prepayment experience. These support tranches are subject to a higher level of maturity risk compared to other mortgage-related securities, and usually provide a higher yield to compensate investors. If principal cash flows are received in amounts outside a pre-determined range such that the support bonds cannot lend or absorb sufficient cash flows to the PAC securities as intended, the PAC securities are subject to heightened maturity risk. Consistent with the Fund’s investment objectives and policies, the Sub-Advisers may invest in various tranches of CMO bonds, including support bonds.

*Commercial Mortgage-Backed Securities.* The Fund may invest in commercial mortgage-backed securities, which include securities that reflect an interest in, and are secured by, mortgage loans on commercial real property. Many of the risks of investing in commercial mortgage-backed securities reflect the risks of investing in the real estate securing the underlying mortgage loans. These risks reflect the effects of local and other economic conditions on real estate markets, the ability of tenants to make loan payments, and the ability of a property to attract and retain tenants. Commercial mortgage-backed securities may be less liquid and exhibit greater price volatility than other types of mortgage- or asset-backed securities.

*Other Mortgage-Related Securities.* The Fund may invest in other mortgage-related securities, which include securities other than those described above that directly or indirectly represent a participation in, or are secured by and payable from, mortgage loans on real property, including mortgage dollar rolls, CMO residuals or stripped mortgage-backed securities (“SMBS”). Other mortgage-related securities may be equity or debt securities issued by agencies or instrumentalities of the U.S. Government or by private originators of, or investors in, mortgage loans, including savings and loan associations, homebuilders, mortgage banks, commercial banks, investment banks, partnerships, trusts and special purpose entities of the foregoing.

*CMO Residuals.* The Fund may invest in CMO residuals, which are mortgage securities issued by agencies or instrumentalities of the U.S. Government or by private originators of, or investors in, mortgage loans, including savings and loan associations, homebuilders, mortgage banks, commercial banks, investment banks and special purpose entities of the foregoing.

The cash flow generated by the mortgage assets underlying a series of CMOs is applied first to make required payments of principal and interest on the CMOs and second to pay the related administrative expenses and any management fee of the issuer. The residual in a CMO structure generally represents the interest in any excess cash flow remaining after making the foregoing payments. Each payment of such excess cash flow to a holder of the related CMO residual represents income and/or a return of capital. The amount of residual cash flow resulting from a CMO will depend on, among other things, the characteristics of the mortgage assets, the coupon rate of each class of CMO, prevailing interest rates, the amount of administrative expenses and the pre-payment experience on the mortgage assets. In particular, the yield to maturity on CMO residuals is extremely sensitive to pre-payments on the related underlying mortgage assets, in the same manner as an interest-only (“IO”) class of stripped mortgage-backed securities. See “Other Mortgage-Related Securities – Stripped Mortgage-Backed Securities.” In addition, if a series of a CMO includes a class that bears interest at an adjustable rate, the yield to maturity on the related CMO residual will also be extremely sensitive to changes in the level of the index upon which interest rate adjustments are based. As described below with respect to stripped mortgage-backed securities, in certain circumstances the Fund may fail to recoup fully its initial investment in a CMO residual.

CMO residuals are generally purchased and sold by institutional investors through several investment banking firms acting as brokers or dealers. Transactions in CMO residuals are generally completed only after careful review of the characteristics of the securities in question. In addition, CMO residuals may, or pursuant to an exemption therefrom, may not have been registered under the Securities Act. CMO residuals, whether or not registered under the Securities Act, may be subject to certain restrictions on transferability, and may be deemed “illiquid” and subject to the Fund’s limitations on investment in illiquid securities.

*Adjustable Rate Mortgage-Backed Securities (“ARMBSs”).* The Fund may invest in ARMBSs, which have interest rates that reset at periodic intervals. Acquiring ARMBSs permits the Fund to participate in increases in prevailing current interest rates through periodic adjustments in the coupons of mortgages underlying the pool on which ARMBSs are based. Such ARMBSs generally have higher current yield and lower price fluctuations than is the case with more traditional fixed income debt securities of comparable rating and maturity. In addition, when prepayments of principal are made on the underlying mortgages during periods of rising interest rates, the Fund can reinvest the proceeds of such prepayments at rates higher than those at which they were previously invested. Mortgages underlying most ARMBSs, however, have limits on the allowable annual or lifetime increases that can be made in the interest rate that the mortgagor pays. Therefore, if current interest rates rise above such limits over the period of the limitation, the Fund, when holding an ARMBS, does not benefit from further increases in interest rates. Moreover, when interest rates are in excess of coupon rates (*i.e.*, the rates being paid by mortgagors) of the mortgages, ARMBSs behave more like fixed income securities and less like adjustable rate securities and are subject to the risks associated with fixed income securities. In addition, during periods of rising interest rates, increases in the coupon rate of adjustable rate mortgages generally lag current market interest rates slightly, thereby creating the potential for capital depreciation on such securities.

*Stripped Mortgage-Backed Securities (“SMBSs”).* The Fund may invest in SMBS, which are derivative multi-class mortgage securities. SMBSs may be issued by agencies or instrumentalities of the U.S. Government, or by private originators of, or investors in, mortgage loans, including savings and loan associations, mortgage banks, commercial banks, investment banks and special purpose entities of the foregoing.

SMBSs are usually structured with two classes that receive different proportions of the interest and principal distributions on a pool of mortgage assets. A common type of SMBS will have one class receiving some of the interest and most of the principal from the mortgage assets, while the other class will receive most of the interest and the remainder of the principal. In the most extreme case, one class will receive all of the interest (the “IO” class), while the other class will receive all of the principal (the principal-only or “PO” class). The yield to maturity on an IO class is extremely sensitive to the rate of principal payments (including pre-payments) on the related underlying mortgage assets, and a rapid rate of principal payments may have a material adverse effect on the Fund’s yield to maturity from these securities. If the underlying mortgage assets experience greater than anticipated pre-payments of principal, the Fund may fail to recoup some or all of its initial investment in these securities even if the security is in one of the highest rating categories.

*Asset-Backed Securities (“ABSs”).* The Fund may invest in ABSs, which are bonds backed by pools of loans or other receivables. ABSs are created from many types of assets, including auto loans, credit card receivables, home equity loans, and student loans. ABSs are issued through special purpose vehicles that are bankruptcy remote from the issuer of the

collateral. The credit quality of an ABS transaction depends on the performance of the underlying assets. To protect ABS investors from the possibility that some borrowers could miss payments or even default on their loans, ABSs include various forms of credit enhancement. Some ABSs, particularly home equity loan transactions, are subject to interest-rate risk and prepayment risk. A change in interest rates can affect the pace of payments on the underlying loans, which in turn, affects total return on the securities. ABSs also carry credit or default risk. If many borrowers on the underlying loans default, losses could exceed the credit enhancement level and result in losses to investors in an ABS transaction. Finally, ABSs have structure risk due to a unique characteristic known as early amortization, or early payout, risk. Built into the structure of most ABSs are triggers for early payout, designed to protect investors from losses. These triggers are unique to each transaction and can include a big rise in defaults on the underlying loans, a sharp drop in the credit enhancement level, or even the bankruptcy of the originator. Once early amortization begins, all incoming loan payments (after expenses are paid) are used to pay investors as quickly as possible based upon a predetermined priority of payment. Consistent with the Fund's investment objectives and policies, the Sub-Advisers also may invest in other types of ABSs.

*Collateralized Bond Obligation ("CBO"), Collateralized Loan Obligation ("CLO") and Other Collateralized Debt Obligation ("CDO")*. The Fund may invest in each of collateralized bond obligations, collateralized loan obligations, other collateralized debt obligations and other similarly structured securities. CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs are types of asset-backed securities. A CBO is a trust which is often backed by a diversified pool of high risk, below investment-grade fixed income securities. The collateral can be from many different types of fixed income securities such as high yield debt, residential privately issued mortgage-related securities, commercial privately issued mortgage-related securities, trust preferred securities and emerging market debt. A CLO is a trust typically collateralized by a pool of loans, which may include, among others, domestic and foreign senior secured loans, senior unsecured loans, and subordinate corporate loans, including loans that may be rated below investment-grade or equivalent unrated loans. Other CDOs are trusts backed by other types of assets representing obligations of various parties. CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs may charge management fees and administrative expenses.

For CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs, the cash flows from the trust are split into two or more portions, called tranches, varying in risk and yield. The riskiest portion is the "equity" tranche which bears the bulk of defaults from the bonds or loans in the trust and serves to protect the other, more senior tranches from default in all but the most severe circumstances. Since they are partially protected from defaults, senior tranches from a CBO trust, CLO trust or trust of another CDO typically have higher ratings and lower yields than their underlying securities, and can be rated investment-grade. Despite the protection from the equity tranche, CBO, CLO or other CDO tranches can experience substantial losses due to actual defaults, increased sensitivity to defaults due to collateral default and disappearance of protecting tranches, market anticipation of defaults, as well as aversion to CBO, CLO or other CDO securities as a class.

The risks of an investment in a CBO, CLO or other CDO depend largely on the type of the collateral securities and the class of the instrument in which the Fund invests. Normally, CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs are privately offered and sold, and thus, are not registered under the securities laws. As a result, investments in CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs may be characterized by the Fund as illiquid securities, however, an active dealer market may exist for CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs allowing them to qualify for Rule 144A transactions. In addition to the normal risks associated with fixed income securities discussed elsewhere in this SAI and certain Funds' Prospectuses (*e.g.*, fixed income risk and credit risk), CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs carry additional risks including, but are not limited to, (i) the possibility that distributions from collateral securities will not be adequate to make interest or other payments, (ii) the quality of the collateral may decline in value or default, (iii) the risk that the Fund may invest in CBOs, CLOs or other CDOs that are subordinate to other classes, and (iv) the possibility that the complex structure of the security may not be fully understood at the time of investment and may produce disputes with the issuer or unexpected investment results.

## BANK LOANS

Bank loans typically are arranged through private negotiations between a borrower and several financial institutions or a group of lenders which are represented by one or more lenders acting as agent. The agent is often a commercial bank that originates the loan and invites other parties to join the lending syndicate. The agent will be primarily responsible for negotiating the loan agreement and will have responsibility for the documentation and ongoing administration of the loan on behalf of the lenders after completion of the loan transaction. The Fund can invest in a bank loan either as a direct lender or through an assignment or participation.

When the Fund acts as a direct lender, it will have a direct contractual relationship with the borrower and may participate in structuring the loan, may enforce compliance by the borrower with the terms of the loan agreement and may have voting, consent and set-off rights under the loan agreement.

Loan assignments are investments in all or a portion of certain bank loans purchased from the lenders or from other third parties. The purchaser of an assignment typically will acquire direct rights against the borrower under the loan. While the purchaser of an assignment typically succeeds to all the rights and obligations of the assigning lender under the loan agreement, because assignments are arranged through private negotiations between potential assignees and assignors, or other third parties whose interests are being assigned, the rights and obligations acquired by the Fund may differ from and be more limited than those held by the assigning lender.

A holder of a loan participation typically has only a contractual right with the seller of the participation and not with the borrower or any other entities interpositioned between the seller of the participation and the borrower. As such, the purchaser of a loan participation assumes the credit risk of the seller of the participation, and any intermediary entities between the seller and the borrower, in addition to the credit risk of the borrower. When the Fund holds a loan participation, it will have the right to receive payments of principal, interest and fees to which it may be entitled only from the seller of the participation and only upon receipt of the seller of such payments from the borrower or from any intermediary parties between the seller and the borrower. Additionally, the Fund generally will have no right to enforce compliance by the borrower with the terms of the loan agreement, will have no voting, consent or set-off rights under the loan agreement and may not directly benefit from the collateral supporting the loan although lenders that sell participations generally are required to distribute liquidation proceeds received by them pro rata among the holders of such participations. In the event of the bankruptcy or insolvency of the borrower, a loan participation may be subject to certain defenses that can be asserted by the borrower as a result of improper conduct by the seller or intermediary. If the borrower fails to pay principal and interest when due, the Fund may be subject to greater delays, expenses and risks than those that would have been involved if the Fund had purchased a direct obligation of such borrower.

The Fund may have difficulty disposing of bank loans because, in certain cases, the market for such instruments is not highly liquid. The lack of a highly liquid secondary market may have an adverse impact on the value of such instruments and on the Fund's ability to dispose of the bank loan in response to a specific economic event, such as deterioration in the creditworthiness of the borrower. Furthermore, transactions in many loans settle on a delayed basis, and the Fund may not receive the proceeds from the sale of a loan for a substantial period of time after the sale. As a result, those proceeds will not be available to make additional investments or to meet the Fund's redemption obligations. To the extent that extended settlement creates short-term liquidity needs, the Fund may satisfy these needs by holding additional cash or selling other investments (potentially at an inopportune time, which could result in losses to the Fund).

Bank loans may not be considered "securities," and purchasers, such as the Fund, therefore, may not be entitled to rely on the anti-fraud protections of the federal securities laws.

The Adviser or Sub-Advisers may from time to time have the opportunity to receive material, non-public information ("Confidential Information") about the borrower, including financial information and related documentation regarding the borrower that is not publicly available. Pursuant to applicable policies and procedures, the Adviser or Sub-Advisers may (but are not required to) seek to avoid receipt of Confidential Information from the borrower so as to avoid possible restrictions on their ability to purchase and sell investments on behalf of the Fund and other clients to which such Confidential Information relates (*e.g.*, publicly traded securities issued by the borrower). In such circumstances, the Fund (and other clients of the Adviser or Sub-Advisers) may be disadvantaged in comparison to other investors, including with respect to the price the Fund pays or receives when it buys or sells a bank loan. Further, the Adviser or Sub-Advisers' abilities to assess the desirability of proposed consents, waivers or amendments with respect to certain bank loans may be compromised if they are not privy to available Confidential Information. The Adviser or Sub-Advisers may also determine to receive such Confidential Information in certain circumstances under their applicable policies and procedures. If the Adviser or Sub-Advisers intentionally or unintentionally come into possession of Confidential Information, they may be unable, potentially for a substantial period of time, to purchase or sell publicly traded securities to which such Confidential Information relates.

## U.S. GOVERNMENT SECURITIES

The Fund may invest in U.S. government securities. Securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government or its agencies or instrumentalities include U.S. Treasury securities, which are backed by the full faith and credit of the U.S. Treasury and which differ only in their interest rates, maturities, and times of issuance. U.S. Treasury bills have initial maturities of one year or less, U.S. Treasury notes have initial maturities of one to ten years, and U.S. Treasury bonds generally have initial maturities of greater than ten years. Certain U.S. government securities are issued or guaranteed by agencies or instrumentalities of the U.S. Government including, but not limited to, obligations of U.S. Government agencies or instrumentalities such as Fannie Mae, Freddie Mac, Ginnie Mae, the Small Business Administration, the Federal Farm Credit Administration, the Federal Home Loan Banks, Banks for Cooperatives (including the Central Bank for Cooperatives), the Federal Land Banks, the Federal Intermediate Credit Banks, the Tennessee Valley Authority, the Export-Import Bank of the United States, the Commodity Credit Corporation, the Federal Financing Bank, the National Credit Union Administration and the Federal Agricultural Mortgage Corporation (Farmer Mac).

Some obligations issued or guaranteed by U.S. Government agencies and instrumentalities, including, for example, Ginnie Mae pass-through certificates, are supported by the full faith and credit of the U.S. Treasury. Other obligations issued by or guaranteed by federal agencies, such as those securities issued by Fannie Mae, are supported by the discretionary authority of the U.S. Government to purchase certain obligations of the federal agency, while other obligations issued by or guaranteed by federal agencies, such as those of the Federal Home Loan Banks, are supported by the right of the issuer to borrow from the U.S. Treasury. While the U.S. Government provides financial support to such U.S. Government-sponsored federal agencies, no assurance can be given that the U.S. Government will always do so, since the U.S. Government is not so obligated by law. U.S. Treasury notes and bonds typically pay coupon interest semi-annually and repay the principal at maturity.

In September 2008, the U.S. Treasury announced a federal takeover of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac, placing the two federal instrumentalities in conservatorship. Under the terms of the takeover, the U.S. Treasury agreed to acquire \$1 billion of senior preferred stock of each instrumentality and obtained warrants for the purchase of common stock of each instrumentality. Under these Senior Preferred Stock Purchase Agreements (“SPAs”), the U.S. Treasury has pledged to provide a limited amount of capital per instrumentality as needed, including the contribution of cash capital to the instrumentalities in the event their liabilities exceed their assets. In May 2009, the U.S. Treasury increased its maximum commitment to each instrumentality under the SPAs from \$100 billion to \$200 billion per instrumentality. In December 2009, the U.S. Treasury amended the SPAs to provide Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac with some additional flexibility to meet the requirement to reduce their mortgage portfolios. Also in December 2009, the U.S. Treasury further amended the SPAs to allow the cap on the U.S. Treasury’s funding commitment to increase as necessary to accommodate any cumulative reduction in Fannie Mae’s and Freddie Mac’s net worth through the end of 2012. On August 17, 2012, the U.S. Treasury announced that it was again amending the Agreement to terminate the requirement that Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac each pay a 10% dividend annually on all amounts received under the funding commitment. Instead, they are now required to transfer to the U.S. Treasury on a quarterly basis all profits earned during a quarter that exceed a certain capital reserve amount. The U.S. Treasury stated that the purpose of the change was to wind down Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae and to benefit taxpayers. However, shareholders of Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae have since sued the U.S. Government over the profit sweep, contending that it was a breach of contract and an improper taking of private property without just compensation. Although the suits have been unsuccessful so far, both of these legal arguments continue to move forward through various courts and could influence the U.S. Government’s policy towards the mortgage financial system. In addition, new initiatives from the Trump administration, such as proposed reductions to corporate tax rates, could affect the value of certain assets held by Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae.

Until further action is taken, the actions of the U.S. Treasury are intended to ensure that Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac maintain a positive net worth and meet their financial obligations, preventing mandatory triggering of receivership. No assurance can be given that the U.S. Treasury initiatives will be successful. Other U.S. government securities the Fund may invest in include (but are not limited to) securities issued or guaranteed by the Federal Housing Administration, Farmers Home Loan Administration, Export-Import Bank of the U.S., Small Business Administration, General Services Administration, Central Bank for Cooperatives, Federal Farm Credit Banks, Federal Intermediate Credit Banks, Federal Land Banks, Maritime Administration, Tennessee Valley Authority and District of Columbia Armory Board. Because the U.S. Government is not obligated by law to provide support to an instrumentality it sponsors, the Fund will invest in

obligations issued by such an instrumentality only if the Sub-Adviser determines that the credit risk with respect to the instrumentality does not make its securities unsuitable for investment by the Fund.

The Fund may also invest in separately traded principal and interest components of securities guaranteed or issued by the U.S. Government or its agencies, instrumentalities or sponsored enterprises if such components trade independently under the Separate Trading of Registered Interest and Principal of Securities program (“STRIPS”) or any similar program sponsored by the U.S. Government. STRIPS may be sold as zero coupon securities. See “Zero Coupon Bonds” for additional information.

## ZERO COUPON BONDS

The Fund may invest in U.S. Treasury zero-coupon bonds. These securities are U.S. Treasury bonds which have been stripped of their un-matured interest coupons, the coupons themselves, and receipts or certificates representing interests in such stripped debt obligations and coupons. Interest is not paid in cash during the term of these securities, but is accrued and paid at maturity. Such obligations have greater price volatility than coupon obligations and other normal interest-paying securities, and the value of zero coupon securities reacts more quickly to changes in interest rates than do coupon bonds. Because dividend income is accrued throughout the term of the zero coupon obligation, but is not actually received until maturity, the Fund may have to sell other securities to pay said accrued dividends prior to maturity of the zero coupon obligation. Unlike regular U.S. Treasury bonds, which pay semi-annual interest, U.S. Treasury zero coupon bonds do not generate semi-annual coupon payments. Instead, zero coupon bonds are purchased at a substantial discount from the maturity value of such securities, the discount reflecting the current value of the deferred interest; this discount is amortized as interest income over the life of the security, and is taxable even though there is no cash return until maturity. Zero coupon U.S. Treasury issues originally were created by government bond dealers who bought U.S. Treasury bonds and issued receipts representing an ownership interest in the interest coupons or in the principal portion of the bonds. Subsequently, the U.S. Treasury began directly issuing zero coupon bonds with the introduction of STRIPS. While zero coupon bonds eliminate the reinvestment risk of regular coupon issues, that is, the risk of subsequently investing the periodic interest payments at a lower rate than that of the security held, zero coupon bonds fluctuate much more sharply than regular coupon-bearing bonds. Thus, when interest rates rise, the value of zero coupon bonds will decrease to a greater extent than will the value of regular bonds having the same interest rate.

## REAL ESTATE INVESTMENT TRUSTS (“REITs”)

A REIT is a corporation or business trust (that would otherwise be taxed as a corporation) which meets the definitional requirements of the Internal Revenue Code. The Internal Revenue Code permits a qualifying REIT to deduct from taxable income the dividends paid, thereby effectively eliminating corporate level federal income tax and making the REIT a pass-through vehicle for federal income tax purposes. To meet the definitional requirements of the Internal Revenue Code, a REIT must, among other things: invest substantially all of its assets in interests in real estate (including mortgages and other REITs), cash and government securities; derive most of its income from rents from real property or interest on loans secured by mortgages on real property; and, in general, distribute annually 90% or more of its otherwise taxable income to shareholders.

REITs are sometimes informally characterized as Equity REITs and Mortgage REITs. An Equity REIT invests primarily in the fee ownership or leasehold ownership of land and buildings; a Mortgage REIT invests primarily in mortgages on real property, which may secure construction, development or long-term loans.

REITs may be affected by changes in underlying real estate values, which may have an exaggerated effect to the extent that REITs in which the Fund invests may concentrate investments in particular geographic regions or property types. Additionally, rising interest rates may cause investors in REITs to demand a higher annual yield from future distributions, which may in turn decrease market prices for equity securities issued by REITs. Rising interest rates also generally increase the costs of obtaining financing, which could cause the value of the Fund’s investments to decline. During periods of declining interest rates, certain Mortgage REITs may hold mortgages that the mortgagors elect to prepay, which prepayment may diminish the yield on securities issued by such Mortgage REITs. In addition, Mortgage REITs may be affected by the ability of borrowers to repay when due the debt extended by the REIT and Equity REITs may be affected by the ability of tenants to pay rent.

Certain REITs have relatively small market capitalization, which may tend to increase the volatility of the market price of securities issued by such REITs. Furthermore, REITs are dependent upon specialized management skills, have limited diversification and are, therefore, subject to risks inherent in operating and financing a limited number of projects. By investing in REITs indirectly through the Fund, a shareholder will bear not only his or her proportionate share of the expenses of the Fund, but also, indirectly, similar expenses of the REITs. REITs depend generally on their ability to generate cash flow to make distributions to shareholders.

In addition to these risks, Equity REITs may be affected by changes in the value of the underlying property owned by the trusts, while Mortgage REITs may be affected by the quality of any credit extended. Further, Equity and Mortgage REITs are dependent upon management skills and generally may not be diversified. Equity and Mortgage REITs are also subject to heavy cash flow dependency defaults by borrowers and self-liquidation. In addition, Equity and Mortgage REITs could possibly fail to qualify for tax free pass-through of income under the Internal Revenue Code or to maintain their exemptions from registration under the 1940 Act. The above factors may also adversely affect a borrower's or a lessee's ability to meet its obligations to the REIT. In the event of default by a borrower or lessee, the REIT may experience delays in enforcing its rights as a mortgagee or lessor and may incur substantial costs associated with protecting its investments.

#### EXCHANGE-TRADED NOTES (ETNs)

The Fund may invest in ETNs. ETNs are senior, unsecured unsubordinated debt securities issued by an underwriting bank that are designed to provide returns that are linked to a particular benchmark less investor fees. ETNs have a maturity date and, generally, are backed only by the creditworthiness of the issuer. As a result, the value of an ETN may be influenced by time to maturity, level of supply and demand for the ETN, volatility and lack of liquidity in the underlying market (*e.g.*, the commodities market), changes in the applicable interest rates, changes in the issuer's credit rating, and economic, legal, political or geographic events that affect the referenced market. ETNs also may be subject to credit risk.

It is expected that the issuer's credit rating will be investment-grade at the time of investment, however, the credit rating may be revised or withdrawn at any time and there is no assurance that a credit rating will remain in effect for any given time period. If a rating agency lowers the issuer's credit rating or there is a decline in the perceived creditworthiness of the issuer, the value of the ETN will decline, as a lower credit rating reflects a greater risk that the issuer will default on its obligation to ETN investors. The Fund must pay an investor fee when investing in an ETN, which will reduce the amount of return on investment at maturity or upon redemption. There may be restrictions on the Fund's right to redeem its investment in an ETN, which is meant to be held until maturity. There are no periodic interest payments for ETNs, and principal typically is not protected. As is the case with other ETPs, an investor could lose some of or the entire amount invested in ETNs. The Fund's decision to sell its ETN holdings may be limited by the availability of a secondary market.

#### HYBRID INSTRUMENTS

The Fund may invest in hybrid instruments. A hybrid instrument is a type of potentially high-risk derivative that combines a traditional stock, bond, or commodity with an option or forward contract. Generally, the principal amount, amount payable upon maturity or redemption, or interest rate of a hybrid is tied (positively or negatively) to the price of some security, commodity, currency or securities index or another interest rate or some other economic factor (each a "benchmark"). The interest rate or (unlike most fixed income securities) the principal amount payable at maturity of a hybrid security may be increased or decreased, depending on changes in the value of the benchmark. An example of a hybrid instrument could be a bond issued by an oil company that pays a small base level of interest with additional interest that accrues in correlation with the extent to which oil prices exceed a certain predetermined level. Such a hybrid instrument would be a combination of a bond and a call option on oil.

Hybrid instruments can be used as an efficient means of pursuing a variety of investment goals, including currency hedging, and increased total return. Hybrid instruments may not bear interest or pay dividends. The value of a hybrid instrument or its interest rate may be a multiple of a benchmark and, as a result, may be leveraged and move (up or down) more steeply and rapidly than the benchmark. These benchmarks may be sensitive to economic and political events, such as commodity shortages and currency devaluations, which cannot be readily foreseen by the purchaser of a hybrid instrument. Under certain conditions, the redemption value of a hybrid instrument could be zero. Thus, an investment in a hybrid instrument

may entail significant market risks that are not associated with a similar investment in a traditional, U.S. dollar-denominated bond that has a fixed principal amount and pays a fixed rate or floating rate of interest. The purchase of a hybrid instrument also exposes the Fund to the credit risk of the issuer of the hybrid instrument. These risks may cause significant fluctuations in the NAV of the Fund.

Certain hybrid instruments may provide exposure to the commodities markets. These are derivative securities with one or more commodity-linked components that have payment features similar to commodity futures contracts, commodity options, or similar instruments. Commodity-linked hybrid instruments may be either equity or debt securities, and are considered hybrid instruments because they have both security and commodity-like characteristics. A portion of the value of these instruments may be derived from the value of a commodity, futures contract, index or other economic variable. The Fund will only invest in commodity-linked hybrid instruments that qualify, under applicable rules of the CFTC, for an exemption from the provisions of the CEA.

Certain issuers of structured products, such as hybrid instruments, may be deemed to be investment companies as defined in the 1940 Act. As a result, the Fund's investments in these products may be subject to limits applicable to investments in investment companies and may be subject to restrictions contained in the 1940 Act.

*Structured Notes.* The Fund may invest in structured notes, which are debt obligations that also contain an embedded derivative component with characteristics that adjust the obligation's risk/return profile. Generally, the performance of a structured note will track that of the underlying debt obligation and the derivative embedded within it. The Fund has the right to receive periodic interest payments from the issuer of the structured notes at an agreed-upon interest rate and a return of the principal at the maturity date.

Structured notes are typically privately negotiated transactions between two or more parties. The Fund bears the risk that the issuer of the structured note will default or become bankrupt which may result in the loss of principal investment and periodic interest payments expected to be received for the duration of its investment in the structured notes.

In the case of structured notes on credit default swaps, the Fund is also subject to the credit risk of the corporate credits underlying the credit default swaps. If one of the underlying corporate credits defaults, the Fund may receive the security that has defaulted, or alternatively a cash settlement may occur, and the Fund's principal investment in the structured note would be reduced by the corresponding face value of the defaulted security.

The market for structured notes may be, or suddenly can become, illiquid. The other parties to the transaction may be the only investors with sufficient understanding of the derivative to be interested in bidding for it. Changes in liquidity may result in significant, rapid, and unpredictable changes in the prices for structured notes. In certain cases, a market price for a credit-linked security may not be available. The collateral for a structured note may be one or more credit default swaps, which are subject to additional risks.

## ILLIQUID SECURITIES

The Fund may hold illiquid securities, including securities that are not readily marketable and securities that are not registered under the Securities Act, but which can be offered and sold to "qualified institutional buyers" under Rule 144A under the Securities Act ("restricted securities"), as long as no more than 15% of the Fund's net assets are held in illiquid securities. The Fund will monitor its portfolio liquidity on an ongoing basis to determine whether, in light of current circumstances, an adequate level of liquidity is being maintained, and will take appropriate steps in order to maintain adequate liquidity if, through a change in values, net assets, or other circumstances, more than 15% of the Fund's net assets are invested in illiquid securities. Illiquid securities include securities subject to contractual or other restrictions on resale and other instruments that lack readily available markets as determined in accordance with SEC guidance.

A portfolio security is illiquid if it cannot be disposed of in the ordinary course of business within seven days at approximately the value ascribed to it by the Fund. Under the current guidelines of the staff of the SEC, illiquid securities also are considered to include, among other securities, purchased OTC options, certain cover for OTC options, repurchase agreements with maturities in excess of seven days, and certain securities whose disposition is restricted under the federal securities laws. The Fund may not be able to sell illiquid securities when a Sub-Adviser considers it desirable to do so or

may have to sell such securities at a price that is lower than the price that could be obtained if the securities were more liquid. In addition, the sale of illiquid securities also may require more time and may result in higher dealer discounts and other selling expenses than does the sale of securities that are not illiquid. Illiquid securities also may be more difficult to value due to the unavailability of reliable market quotations for such securities, and investment in illiquid securities may have an adverse impact on NAV.

#### POOLED INVESTMENT VEHICLES

The Fund may invest in the securities of pooled vehicles that are not investment companies and, thus, not required to comply with the provisions of the 1940 Act. As a result, as a shareholder of such pooled vehicles, the Fund will not have all of the investor protections afforded by the 1940 Act. Such pooled vehicles may, however, be required to comply with the provisions of other federal securities laws, such as the Securities Act. These pooled vehicles typically hold commodities, such as gold or oil, currency, or other property that is itself not a security. If the Fund invests in and thus, is a shareholder of, a pooled vehicle, the Fund's shareholders will indirectly bear the Fund's proportionate share of the fees and expenses paid by the pooled vehicle, including any applicable management fees, in addition to both the management fees payable directly by the Fund to the Adviser and the other expenses that the Fund bears directly in connection with its own operations.

The Fund may invest in certain ETPs that are not taxable as RICs. These non-RIC ETPs may produce non-qualifying income for purposes of the "90% Test" (as defined below), which must be met in order for the Fund to maintain its status as a RIC under the Internal Revenue Code. If one or more of these non-RIC ETPs generates more non-qualifying income for purposes of the 90% Test than the Fund's portfolio management expects, this non-qualifying income may be attributed to the Fund and could cause the Fund to inadvertently fail the 90% Test, thereby causing the Fund to inadvertently fail to qualify as a RIC under the Internal Revenue Code.

#### BORROWING

The Fund may borrow money for investment purposes. Borrowing for investment purposes is one form of leverage. Leveraging investments, by purchasing securities with borrowed money, is a speculative technique that increases investment risk, but also increases investment opportunity. Because substantially all of the Fund's assets will fluctuate in value, whereas the interest obligations on borrowings may be fixed, the NAV of the Fund will increase more when the Fund's portfolio assets increase in value and decrease more when the Fund's portfolio assets decrease in value than would otherwise be the case. Moreover, interest costs on borrowings may fluctuate with changing market rates of interest and may partially offset or exceed the returns on the borrowed funds. Under adverse conditions, the Fund might have to sell portfolio securities to meet interest or principal payments at a time when investment considerations would not favor such sales. The Fund intends to use leverage during periods when the Sub-Advisers believe that the Fund's investment objective would be furthered.

The Fund may also borrow money to facilitate management of the Fund's portfolio by enabling the Fund to meet redemption requests when the liquidation of portfolio instruments would be inconvenient or disadvantageous. Such borrowing is not for investment purposes and will be repaid by the Fund promptly. As required by the 1940 Act, the Fund must maintain continuous asset coverage (total assets, including assets acquired with borrowed funds, less liabilities exclusive of borrowings) of 300% of all amounts borrowed. If, at any time, the value of the Fund's assets should fail to meet this 300% coverage test, the Fund, within three days (not including Sundays and holidays), will reduce the amount of its borrowings to the extent necessary to meet this 300% coverage requirement. Maintenance of this percentage limitation may result in the sale of portfolio securities at a time when investment considerations otherwise indicate that it would be disadvantageous to do so.

#### LENDING PORTFOLIO SECURITIES

The Fund may lend portfolio securities to certain creditworthy borrowers. The borrowers provide collateral that is maintained in an amount at least equal to the current market value of the securities loaned. The Fund may terminate a loan at any time and obtain the return of the securities loaned. The Fund receives the value of any interest or cash or non-cash distributions paid on the loaned securities. Distributions received on loaned securities in lieu of dividend payments (*i.e.*, substitute payments) would not be considered qualified dividend income.

With respect to loans that are collateralized by cash, the borrower will be entitled to receive a fee based on the amount of cash collateral. The Fund is compensated by the difference between the amount earned on the reinvestment of cash collateral and the fee paid to the borrower. In the case of collateral other than cash, the Fund is compensated by a fee paid by the borrower equal to a percentage of the market value of the loaned securities. Any cash collateral may be reinvested in certain short-term instruments either directly on behalf of the lending Fund or through one or more joint accounts or money market funds, which may include those managed by a Sub-Adviser.

The Fund may pay a portion of the interest or fees earned from securities lending to a borrower as described above, and to one or more securities lending agents approved by the Board who administer the lending program for the Fund in accordance with guidelines approved by the Board. In such capacity, the lending agent causes the delivery of loaned securities from the Fund to borrowers, arranges for the return of loaned securities to the Fund at the termination of a loan, requests deposit of collateral, monitors the daily value of the loaned securities and collateral, requests that borrowers add to the collateral when required by the loan agreements, and provides recordkeeping and accounting services necessary for the operation of the program.

Securities lending involves exposure to certain risks, including operational risk (*i.e.*, the risk of losses resulting from problems in the settlement and accounting process), “gap” risk (*i.e.*, the risk of a mismatch between the return on cash collateral reinvestments and the fees the Fund has agreed to pay a borrower), and credit, legal, counterparty and market risk. In the event a borrower does not return the Fund’s securities as agreed, the Fund may experience losses if the proceeds received from liquidating the collateral do not at least equal the value of the loaned security at the time the collateral is liquidated plus the transaction costs incurred in purchasing replacement securities.

#### REVERSE REPURCHASE AGREEMENTS

The Fund may enter into reverse repurchase agreements, which involve the sale of securities with an agreement to repurchase the securities at an agreed-upon price, date and interest payment and have the characteristics of borrowing. The securities purchased with the funds obtained from the agreement and securities collateralizing the agreement will have maturity dates no later than the repayment date. Generally the effect of such transactions is that the Fund can recover all or most of the cash invested in the portfolio securities involved during the term of the reverse repurchase agreement, while in many cases the Fund is able to keep some of the interest income associated with those securities. Such transactions are only advantageous if the Fund has an opportunity to earn a greater rate of interest on the cash derived from these transactions than the interest cost of obtaining the same amount of cash. Opportunities to realize earnings from the use of the proceeds equal to or greater than the interest required to be paid may not always be available and the Fund intends to use the reverse repurchase technique only when a Sub-Adviser believes it will be advantageous to the Fund. The use of reverse repurchase agreements may exaggerate any interim increase or decrease in the value of the Fund’s assets. The Fund’s exposure to reverse repurchase agreements will be covered by securities having a value equal to or greater than such commitments. Under the 1940 Act, reverse repurchase agreements are considered borrowings. Although there is no limit on the percentage of total assets the Fund may invest in reverse repurchase agreements, the use of reverse repurchase agreements is not a principal strategy of the Fund.

#### OTHER SHORT-TERM INSTRUMENTS

In addition to repurchase agreements, the Fund may invest in short-term instruments, including money market instruments, on an ongoing basis to provide liquidity or for other reasons. Money market instruments are generally short-term investments that may include but are not limited to: (i) shares of money market funds; (ii) obligations issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies or instrumentalities (including government-sponsored enterprises); (iii) negotiable certificates of deposit (“CDs”), bankers’ acceptances, fixed time deposits and other obligations of U.S. and foreign banks (including foreign branches) and similar institutions; (iv) commercial paper rated at the date of purchase “Prime-1” by Moody’s or “A-1” by S&P, or if unrated, of comparable quality as determined by a Sub-Adviser; (v) non-convertible corporate debt securities (*e.g.*, bonds and debentures) with remaining maturities at the date of purchase of not more than 397 days and that satisfy the rating requirements set forth in Rule 2a-7 under the 1940 Act; and (vi) short-term U.S. dollar-denominated obligations of foreign banks (including U.S. branches) that, in the opinion of a Sub-Adviser, are of comparable quality to obligations of U.S. banks which may be purchased by the Fund. Any of these instruments may be purchased on a current or a forward-settled basis. Time deposits are non-negotiable deposits maintained in banking institutions for specified

periods of time at stated interest rates. Bankers' acceptances are time drafts drawn on commercial banks by borrowers, usually in connection with international transactions.

## INVESTMENT COMPANIES

The Fund may invest in the securities of other investment companies, including money market funds, subject to applicable limitations under Section 12(d)(1) of the 1940 Act. Pursuant to Section 12(d)(1), the Fund may invest in the securities of another investment company (the "acquired company") provided that the Fund, immediately after such purchase or acquisition, does not own in the aggregate: (i) more than 3% of the total outstanding voting stock of the acquired company; (ii) securities issued by the acquired company having an aggregate value in excess of 5% of the value of the total assets of the Fund; or (iii) securities issued by the acquired company and all other investment companies (other than Treasury stock of the Fund) having an aggregate value in excess of 10% of the value of the total assets of the Fund. To the extent allowed by law or regulation, the Fund may invest its assets in securities of investment companies that are money market funds in excess of the limits discussed above.

If the Fund invests in and, thus, is a shareholder of, another investment company, the Fund's shareholders will indirectly bear the Fund's proportionate share of the fees and expenses paid by such other investment company, including advisory fees, in addition to both the management fees payable directly by the Fund to the Fund's own investment adviser and the other expenses that the Fund bears directly in connection with the Fund's own operations.

Consistent with the restrictions discussed above, the Fund may invest in different types of investment companies from time to time, including business development companies ("BDCs"). A BDC is a less common type of investment company that more closely resembles an operating company than a typical investment company. BDCs generally focus on investing in, and providing managerial assistance to, small, developing, financially troubled, private companies or other companies that may have value that can be realized over time and with managerial assistance. Similar to an operating company, a BDC's total annual operating expense ratio typically reflects all of the operating expenses incurred by the BDC, and is generally greater than the total annual operating expense ratio of a mutual fund that does not bear the same types of operating expenses. However, as a shareholder of a BDC, a fund does not directly pay for a portion of all of the operating expenses of the BDC, just as a shareholder of a computer manufacturer does not directly pay for the cost of labor associated with producing such computers. As a result, the fees and expenses of a fund that invests in a BDC will be effectively overstated by an amount equal to the "Acquired Fund Fees and Expenses." Acquired Fund Fees and Expenses are not included as an operating expense of a fund in the fund's financial statements, which more accurately reflect the fund's actual operating expenses.

Investment companies may include index-based investments, such as ETFs that hold substantially all of their assets in securities representing a specific index. The main risk of investing in index-based investments is the same as investing in a portfolio of equity securities comprising the index. The market prices of index-based investments will fluctuate in accordance with both changes in the market value of their underlying portfolio securities and due to supply and demand for the instruments on the exchanges on which they are traded (which may result in their trading at a discount or premium to their NAVs). Index-based investments may not replicate exactly the performance of their specific index because of transaction costs and the temporary unavailability of certain component securities of the index.

The Fund may invest in index-based ETFs as well as ETFs that are actively managed.

The Fund may invest in closed-end funds. Closed-end funds are pooled investment vehicles that are registered under the 1940 Act and whose shares are listed and traded on U.S. national securities exchanges. Like any stock, a closed-end fund's share price will fluctuate in response to market conditions and other factors. Secondary market trading prices of closed-end funds should be expected to fluctuate and such prices may be higher (*i.e.*, at a premium) or lower (*i.e.*, at a discount) than the net asset value of a closed-end fund's portfolio holdings. Closed-end fund shares frequently trade at persistent and ongoing discounts to the net asset value of the closed-end fund's portfolio investments. There can be no guarantee that shares of a closed-end fund held by the Fund will not trade at a persistent and ongoing discount. Nor can there be any guarantee that an active market in shares of the closed-end funds held by the Fund will exist. The Fund may not be able to sell closed-end fund shares at a price equal to the net asset value of the closed-end fund. While the Fund seeks to take advantage of differences between the net asset value of closed-end fund shares and any secondary market premiums or

discounts, the Fund may not be able to do so. In addition, there can be no assurance that any closed-end fund will achieve its stated investment objective. While the Fund investing in closed-end funds attempts to diversify its exposure to such investments, lackluster performance of a single closed-end fund can have a negative impact on the performance of the Fund as a whole. The Fund may lose money on its investment in any closed-end fund which, in turn, may cause investors to lose money on an investment in the Fund.

Section 12(d)(1) of the 1940 Act restricts investments by registered investment companies in securities of other registered investment companies, including the Fund. The acquisition of shares of the Fund by registered investment companies is subject to the restrictions of Section 12(d)(1) of the 1940 Act, except as may be permitted by exemptive rules under the 1940 Act or as permitted by an exemptive order obtained by the Trust that permits registered investment companies to invest in the Fund beyond the limits of Section 12(d)(1), subject to certain terms and conditions, including that the registered investment company enter into an agreement with the Fund regarding the terms of the investment.

## FUTURES CONTRACTS, OPTIONS AND SWAP AGREEMENTS

The Fund may utilize futures contracts, options contracts and swap agreements. The SEC has proposed a rule related to the use of derivatives and financial commitment transactions (including short sales, described below) by registered investment companies. Whether and when this proposed rule will be adopted and its potential effects on the Fund are unclear, although they could be substantial and adverse to the Fund. The regulation of these types of transactions in the United States is a changing area of law and is subject to ongoing modification by government, self-regulatory and judicial action.

*Futures Contracts.* Futures contracts generally provide for the future sale by one party and purchase by another party of a specified commodity or security at a specified future time and at a specified price. Index futures contracts are settled daily with a payment by one party to the other of a cash amount based on the difference between the level of the index specified in the contract from one day to the next. Futures contracts are standardized as to maturity date and underlying instrument and are traded on futures exchanges.

The Fund is required to make a good faith margin deposit in cash or U.S. government securities with a broker or custodian to initiate and maintain open positions in futures contracts. A margin deposit is intended to assure completion of the contract (delivery or acceptance of the underlying commodity or payment of the cash settlement amount) if it is not terminated prior to the specified delivery date. Brokers may establish deposit requirements which are higher than the exchange minimums. Futures contracts are customarily purchased and sold on margin deposits which may range upward from less than 5% of the value of the contract being traded.

After a futures contract position is opened, the value of the contract is marked to market daily. If the futures contract price changes to the extent that the margin on deposit does not satisfy margin requirements, payment of additional “variation” margin will be required. Conversely, change in the contract value may reduce the required margin, resulting in a repayment of excess margin to the contract holder. Variation margin payments are made to and from the futures broker for as long as the contract remains open. In such case, the Fund would expect to earn interest income on its margin deposits. Closing out an open futures position is done by taking an opposite position (“buying” a contract which has previously been “sold” or “selling” a contract previously “purchased”) in an identical contract to terminate the position. Brokerage commissions are incurred when a futures contract position is opened or closed.

*Options.* The Fund may purchase and sell put and call options. A call option gives a holder the right to purchase a specific security or an index at a specified price (“exercise price”) within a specified period of time. A put option gives a holder the right to sell a specific security or an index at a specified price within a specified period of time. The initial purchaser of a call option pays the “writer,” *i.e.*, the party selling the option, a premium which is paid at the time of purchase and is retained by the writer whether or not such option is exercised. The Fund may purchase put options to hedge its portfolio against the risk of a decline in the market value of securities held and may purchase call options to hedge against an increase in the price of securities it is committed to purchase. The Fund may write put and call options along with a long position in options to increase its ability to hedge against a change in the market value of the securities it holds or is committed to purchase.

Options may relate to particular securities and may or may not be listed on a national securities exchange and issued by the Options Clearing Corporation. Options trading is a highly specialized activity that entails greater than ordinary investment

risk. Options on particular securities may be more volatile than the underlying securities, and therefore, on a percentage basis, an investment in options may be subject to greater fluctuation than an investment in the underlying securities themselves.

*Restrictions on the Use of Futures and Options.* Under Rule 4.5 of the Commodity Exchange Act (“CEA”), the investment adviser of a registered investment company may claim exclusion from registration as a commodity pool operator only if the registered investment company that it advises uses futures contracts solely for “bona fide hedging purposes” or limits its use of futures contracts for non-bona fide hedging purposes such that (i) the aggregate initial margin and premiums required to establish non-bona fide hedging positions with respect to futures contracts do not exceed 5% of the liquidation value of the registered investment company's portfolio, or (ii) the aggregate “notional value” of the non-bona fide hedging commodity interests do not exceed 100% of the liquidation value of the registered investment company's portfolio (taking into account unrealized profits and unrealized losses on any such positions). The Adviser has claimed exclusion on behalf of the Fund under Rule 4.5. Rule 4.5 effectively limits the Fund's use, and its investment in funds that make use of futures, options on futures, swaps, or other commodity interests. The Fund currently intends to comply with the terms of Rule 4.5 so as to avoid regulation as a commodity pool, and as a result, the ability of the Fund to utilize, or invest in funds that utilize, futures, options on futures, swaps, or other commodity interests may be limited in accordance with the terms of the rule.

*Risks of Futures and Options Transactions.* Positions in futures contracts and options may be closed out only on an exchange which provides a secondary market therefore. However, there can be no assurance that a liquid secondary market will exist for any particular futures contract or option at any specific time. Thus, it may not be possible to close a futures or options position. In the event of adverse price movements, the Fund would continue to be required to make daily cash payments to maintain its required margin. In such situations, if the Fund has insufficient cash, it may have to sell portfolio securities to meet daily margin requirements at a time when it may be disadvantageous to do so. In addition, the Fund may be required to make delivery of the instruments underlying futures contracts it has sold.

The Fund will minimize the risk that it will be unable to close out a futures or options contract by only entering into futures and options for which there appears to be a liquid secondary market.

The risk of loss in trading futures contracts or uncovered call options in some strategies (*e.g.*, selling uncovered index futures contracts) is potentially unlimited. The risk of a futures position may still be large as traditionally measured due to the low margin deposits required. In many cases, a relatively small price movement in a futures contract may result in immediate and substantial loss or gain to the investor relative to the size of a required margin deposit.

Utilization of futures transactions by the Fund involves the risk of loss by the Fund of margin deposits in the event of bankruptcy of a broker with whom the Fund has an open position in the futures contract or option.

Certain financial futures exchanges limit the amount of fluctuation permitted in futures contract prices during a single trading day. The daily limit establishes the maximum amount that the price of a futures contract may vary either up or down from the previous day's settlement price at the end of a trading session. Once the daily limit has been reached in a particular type of contract, no trades may be made on that day at a price beyond that limit. The daily limit governs only price movement during a particular trading day and therefore does not limit potential losses, because the limit may prevent the liquidation of unfavorable positions. Futures contract prices have occasionally moved to the daily limit for several consecutive trading days with little or no trading, thereby preventing prompt liquidation of futures positions and subjecting some futures traders to substantial losses.

*Swap Agreements.* The Fund may enter into swap agreements; including interest rate, index, and total return swap agreements. Swap agreements are contracts between parties in which one party agrees to make periodic payments to the other party based on the change in market value or level of a specified rate, index or asset. In return, the other party agrees to make payments to the first party based on the return of a different specified rate, index or asset. Swap agreements will usually be done on a net basis, *i.e.*, where the two parties make net payments with the Fund receiving or paying, as the case may be, only the net amount of the two payments. The net amount of the excess, if any, of the Fund's obligations over its entitlements with respect to each swap is accrued on a daily basis and an amount of cash or equivalents having an aggregate value at least equal to the accrued excess is maintained by the Fund.

In a total return swap transaction, one party agrees to pay the other party an amount equal to the total return on a defined underlying asset or a non-asset reference during a specified period of time. The underlying asset might be a security or basket of securities, and the non-asset reference could be a securities index. In return, the other party would make periodic payments based on a fixed or variable interest rate or on the total return from a different underlying asset or non-asset reference. The payments of the two parties could be made on a net basis.

*Options on Swaps.* An option on a swap agreement, or a “swaption,” is a contract that gives a counterparty the right (but not the obligation) to enter into a new swap agreement or to shorten, extend, cancel or otherwise modify an existing swap agreement, at some designated future time on specified terms. In return, the purchaser pays a “premium” to the seller of the contract. The seller of the contract receives the premium and bears the risk of unfavorable changes on the underlying swap. The Fund may write (sell) and purchase put and call swaptions. The Fund may also enter into swaptions on either an asset-based or liability-based basis, depending on whether the Fund is hedging its assets or its liabilities. The Fund may write (sell) and purchase put and call swaptions to the same extent it may make use of standard options on securities or other instruments. The Fund may enter into these transactions primarily to preserve a return or spread on a particular investment or portion of its holdings, as a duration management technique, to protect against an increase in the price of securities the Fund anticipates purchasing at a later date, or for any other purposes, such as for speculation to increase returns. Swaptions are generally subject to the same risks involved in the Fund’s use of options.

*Risks of Swap Agreements.* The risk of loss with respect to swaps generally is limited to the net amount of payments that the Fund is contractually obligated to make. Swap agreements are subject to the risk that the swap counterparty will default on its obligations. If such a default occurs, the Fund will have contractual remedies pursuant to the agreements related to the transaction, but such remedies may be subject to bankruptcy and insolvency laws which could affect the Fund’s rights as a creditor (e.g., the Fund may not receive the net amount of payments that it contractually is entitled to receive).

The use of interest-rate and index swaps is a highly specialized activity that involves investment techniques and risks different from those associated with ordinary portfolio security transactions. These transactions generally do not involve the delivery of securities or other underlying assets or principal.

Total return swaps could result in losses if the underlying asset or reference does not perform as anticipated. Total return swaps can have the potential for unlimited losses. The Fund may lose money in a total return swap if the counterparty fails to meet its obligations.

## SHORT SALES

The Fund may engage in short sales that are either “uncovered” or “against the box.” A short sale is “against the box” if at all times during which the short position is open, the Fund owns at least an equal amount of the securities or securities convertible into, or exchangeable without further consideration for, securities of the same issue as the securities that are sold short. A short sale against the box is a taxable transaction to the Fund with respect to the securities that are sold short.

Uncovered short sales are transactions under which the Fund sells a security it does not own. To complete such a transaction, the Fund must borrow the security to make delivery to the buyer. The Fund then is obligated to replace the security borrowed by purchasing the security at the market price at the time of the replacement. The price at such time may be more or less than the price at which the security was sold by the Fund. Until the security is replaced, the Fund is required to pay the lender amounts equal to any dividends or interest that accrue during the period of the loan. To borrow the security, the Fund also may be required to pay a premium, which would increase the cost of the security sold. The proceeds of the short sale will be retained by the broker, to the extent necessary to meet margin requirements, until the short position is closed out.

Until the Fund closes its short position or replaces the borrowed security, the Fund may: (a) segregate cash or liquid securities at such a level that the amount segregated plus the amount deposited with the broker as collateral will equal the current value of the security sold short; or (b) otherwise cover its short position.

## RECENT MARKET CIRCUMSTANCES

Since the financial crisis that started in 2008, the U.S. and many foreign economies continue to experience its after-effects. Conditions in the U.S. and many foreign economies have resulted, and may continue to result, in certain instruments experiencing unusual liquidity issues, increased price volatility and, in some cases, credit downgrades and increased likelihood of default. These events have reduced the willingness and ability of some lenders to extend credit, and have made it more difficult for some borrowers to obtain financing on attractive terms, if at all. In some cases, traditional market participants have been less willing to make a market in some types of debt instruments, which has affected the liquidity of those instruments. During times of market turmoil, investors tend to look to the safety of securities issued or backed by the U.S. Treasury, causing the prices of these securities to rise and the yields to decline. Reduced liquidity in fixed income and credit markets may negatively affect many issuers worldwide. In addition, global economies and financial markets are becoming increasingly interconnected, which increases the possibilities that conditions in one country or region might adversely impact issuers in a different country or region. A rise in protectionist trade policies, and the possibility of changes to some international trade agreements, could affect the economies of many nations in ways that cannot necessarily be foreseen at the present time.

In response to the financial crisis, the U.S. and other governments and the Federal Reserve and certain foreign central banks have taken steps to support financial markets. In some countries where economic conditions are recovering, such countries are nevertheless perceived as still fragile. Withdrawal of government support, failure of efforts in response to the crisis, or investor perception that such efforts are not succeeding, could adversely impact the value and liquidity of certain securities. The severity or duration of adverse economic conditions may also be affected by policy changes made by governments or quasi-governmental organizations, including changes in tax laws. The impact of new financial regulation legislation on the markets and the practical implications for market participants may not be fully known for some time. Regulatory changes are causing some financial services companies to exit long-standing lines of business, resulting in dislocations for other market participants. In addition, the contentious domestic political environment, as well as political and diplomatic events within the United States and abroad, such as the U.S. Government's inability at times to agree on a long-term budget and deficit reduction plan, the threat of a federal government shutdown and threats not to increase the federal government's debt limit, may affect investor and consumer confidence and may adversely impact financial markets and the broader economy, perhaps suddenly and to a significant degree. The U.S. Government has recently reduced federal corporate income tax rates, and future legislative, regulatory and policy changes may result in more restrictions on international trade, less stringent prudential regulation of certain players in the financial markets, and significant new investments in infrastructure and national defense. Markets may react strongly to expectations about the changes in these policies, which could increase volatility, especially if the markets' expectations for changes in government policies are not borne out.

Changes in market conditions will not have the same impact on all types of securities. Interest rates have been unusually low in recent years in the United States and abroad. Because there is little precedent for this situation, it is difficult to predict the impact of a significant rate increase on various markets. For example, because investors may buy securities or other investments with borrowed money, a significant increase in interest rates may cause a decline in the markets for those investments. Because of the sharp decline in the worldwide price of oil, there is a concern that oil producing nations may withdraw significant assets now held in U.S. Treasuries, which could force a substantial increase in interest rates. Regulators have expressed concern that rate increases may cause investors to sell fixed income securities faster than the market can absorb them, contributing to price volatility. In addition, there is a risk that the prices of goods and services in the U.S. and many foreign economies may decline over time, known as deflation (the opposite of inflation). Deflation may have an adverse effect on stock prices and creditworthiness and may make defaults on debt more likely. If a country's economy slips into a deflationary pattern, it could last for a prolonged period and may be difficult to reverse. The precise details and the resulting impact of the United Kingdom's vote to leave the European Union ("EU"), commonly referred to as "Brexit," are not yet known. The effect on the United Kingdom's economy will likely depend on the nature of trade relations with the EU and other major economies following its exit, which are matters being negotiated. The outcomes may cause increased volatility and have a significant adverse impact on world financial markets, other international trade agreements, and the United Kingdom and European economies, as well as the broader global economy for some time.

The impact of these and similar types of developments in the near- and long-term is unknown and could have additional adverse effects on economies, financial markets and asset valuations around the world.

## CYBER SECURITY RISK

Investment companies, such as the Fund, and their service providers may be subject to operational and information security risks resulting from cyber attacks. Cyber attacks include, among other behaviors, stealing or corrupting data maintained online or digitally, denial of service attacks on websites, the unauthorized release of confidential information or various other forms of cyber security breaches. Cyber attacks affecting the Fund or the Adviser, Sub-Advisers, custodian, transfer agent, intermediaries and other third-party service providers may adversely impact the Fund. For instance, cyber attacks may interfere with the processing of shareholder transactions, impact the Fund's ability to calculate its NAV, cause the release of private shareholder information or confidential company information, impede trading, subject the Fund to regulatory fines or financial losses, and cause reputational damage. The Fund may also incur additional costs for cyber security risk management purposes. Similar types of cyber security risks are also present for issuers of securities in which the Fund invests, which could result in material adverse consequences for such issuers, and may cause the Fund's investment in such portfolio companies to lose value.

## INVESTMENT RESTRICTIONS

The Trust has adopted the following investment restrictions as fundamental policies with respect to the Fund. These restrictions cannot be changed with respect to the Fund without the approval of the holders of a majority of the Fund's outstanding voting securities. For these purposes, a "majority of outstanding voting securities" means the vote of the lesser of: (1) 67% or more of the voting securities of the Fund present at the meeting if the holders of more than 50% of the Fund's outstanding voting securities are present or represented by proxy; or (2) more than 50% of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund.

Except with the approval of a majority of the outstanding voting securities, the Fund may not:

1. Borrow money, except to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act, the rules and regulations thereunder and any applicable exemptive relief. The 1940 Act presently allows a fund to (1) borrow from any bank (including pledging, mortgaging or hypothecating assets) in an amount up to 331/3% of its total assets, (2) borrow money for temporary purposes in an amount not exceeding 5% of the value of the Fund's total assets at the time of the loan, and (3) enter into reverse repurchase agreements.
2. Purchase or sell commodities or commodity contracts unless acquired as a result of ownership of securities or other instruments issued by persons that purchase or sell commodities or commodities contracts.
3. With respect to 75% of its total assets, (i) purchase securities of any issuer (except securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies or instrumentalities or shares of investment companies) if, as a result, more than 5% of its total assets would be invested in the securities of such issuer, or (ii) acquire more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of any one issuer.\*
4. Invest 25% or more of its total assets in the securities of one or more issuers conducting their principal business activities in the same industry or group of industries. This limitation does not apply to investments in securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies or instrumentalities, or shares of investment companies. The Fund will not invest 25% or more of its total assets in any investment company that so concentrates.
5. Make loans, except as permitted under the 1940 Act, the rules and regulations thereunder and any applicable exemptive relief.
6. Purchase or sell real estate, except that, to the extent permitted by applicable law, the Fund may (a) invest in securities or other instruments directly or indirectly secured by real estate, and (b) invest in securities or other instruments issued by issuers that invest in real estate.
7. Issue senior securities, except to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act, the rules and regulations thereunder and any applicable exemptive relief.

8. Underwrite securities issued by others, except to the extent that the Fund may be considered an underwriter within the meaning of the Securities Act in the disposition of restricted securities or in connection with investments in other investment companies.

\* For purposes of this policy, the issuer of the underlying security will be deemed to be the issuer of any respective depositary receipt.

In addition to the investment restrictions adopted as fundamental policies as set forth above, the Fund has the following non-fundamental policies, which may be changed without a shareholder vote.

1. The Fund may not purchase illiquid securities.

2. The Fund may not change its investment strategy to invest, under normal circumstances, at least 80% of its net assets (plus any borrowings for investment purposes) in high yield debt securities without providing 60 days' prior notice to shareholders.

If a percentage limitation is adhered to at the time of investment or contract, a later increase or decrease in percentage resulting from any change in value or total or net assets will not result in a violation of such restriction, except that the percentage limitations with respect to the borrowing of money will be observed continuously. If the percentage of the Fund's net assets invested in illiquid securities exceeds 15% due to market activity or changes in the Fund's portfolio, the Fund will take appropriate measures to reduce its holdings of illiquid securities.

The following descriptions of certain provisions of the 1940 Act may assist investors in understanding the above policies and restrictions:

Concentration. The SEC has defined concentration as investing more than 25% of an investment company's net assets in a particular industry or group of industries, with certain exceptions.

Borrowing. The 1940 Act presently allows a fund to borrow from any bank (including pledging, mortgaging or hypothecating assets) in an amount up to 33 1/3% of its total assets (not including temporary borrowings not in excess of 5% of its total assets).

Senior Securities. Senior securities may include any obligation or instrument issued by a fund evidencing indebtedness. The 1940 Act generally prohibits funds from issuing senior securities, although it does not treat certain transactions as senior securities, such as certain borrowings, short sales, reverse repurchase agreements, firm commitment agreements and standby commitments, with appropriate earmarking or segregation of assets to cover such obligation.

Lending. Under the 1940 Act, a fund may only make loans if expressly permitted by its investment policies. The Fund's current investment policy on lending is as follows: the Fund may not make loans as permitted under the 1940 Act, the rules and regulations thereunder and any applicable exemptive relief.

Underwriting. Under the 1940 Act, underwriting securities involves a fund purchasing securities directly from an issuer for the purpose of selling (distributing) them or participating in any such activity either directly or indirectly.

Real Estate. The 1940 Act does not directly restrict an investment company's ability to invest in real estate, but does require that every investment company have a fundamental investment policy governing such investments. The Fund will not purchase or sell real estate, except that, to the extent permitted by applicable law, the Fund may (a) invest in securities or other instruments directly or indirectly secured by real estate, and (b) invest in securities and other instruments issued by issuers that invest in real estate.

Commodities. The 1940 Act does not directly restrict an investment company's ability to invest in commodities, but does require that every investment company have a fundamental investment policy governing such investments. Consistent with applicable law, the Fund may purchase or sell options, futures, forward contracts, or swaps, may invest in securities or other

instruments backed by commodities, including physical commodities, and may invest in companies that are engaged in a commodities business or have a significant portion of their assets in commodities.

Diversification. Under the 1940 Act and the rules, regulations and interpretations thereunder, a “diversified company,” as to 75% of its total assets, may not purchase securities of any issuer (other than obligations of, or guaranteed by, the U.S. Government or its agencies, or instrumentalities or securities of other investment companies) if, as a result, more than 5% of its total assets would be invested in the securities of such issuer, or more than 10% of the issuer’s voting securities would be held by the company.

## **EXCHANGE LISTING AND TRADING**

A discussion of exchange listing and trading matters associated with an investment in the Fund is contained in the Prospectus. The discussion below supplements, and should be read in conjunction with, the Prospectus.

The shares of the Fund are approved for listing and trading on the Exchange. The Fund’s shares trade on the Exchange at prices that may differ to some degree from their NAV. There can be no assurance that the requirements of the Exchange necessary to maintain the listing of shares of the Fund will continue to be met.

The Exchange will consider the suspension of trading in, and will initiate delisting procedures of, the shares of the Fund under any of the following circumstances: (1) following the initial twelve-month period beginning upon the commencement of trading of the Fund, there are fewer than 50 record or beneficial holders of the Fund’s shares; (2) the Fund has failed to file any filings required by the SEC or the Exchange is aware that the Trust is not in compliance with the conditions of any exemptive order or no-action relief granted by the SEC to the Trust with respect to the Fund; (3) if any of continued listing requirements set forth in the Exchange rules are not continuously maintained; (4) if the Exchange files separate proposals under Section 19(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (“Exchange Act”) and any of the statements regarding (a) the description of the index, portfolio, or reference asset; (b) limitations on index or portfolio holdings or reference assets; (c) the applicability of the Exchange listing rules specified in such proposals are not continuously maintained; or (5) such other event shall occur or condition exists that, in the opinion of the Exchange, makes further dealings on the Exchange inadvisable. If the “Intraday Indicative Value” (“IIV”) of the Fund is not being disseminated as required by Exchange rules, the Exchange may halt trading during the day in which such interruption occurs. If the interruption persists past the trading day in which it occurred, the Exchange will halt trading in the Fund’s shares. In addition, the Exchange will remove the Fund’s shares from listing and trading upon termination of the Trust or the Fund.

The Exchange (or market data vendors or other information providers) will disseminate, every fifteen seconds during the regular trading day, an IIV relating to the Fund. The IIV calculations are estimates of the value of the Fund’s NAV per share and are based on the current market value of the securities and/or cash required to be deposited in exchange for a Creation Unit. Premiums and discounts between the IIV and the market price may occur. The IIV does not necessarily reflect the precise composition of the current portfolio of securities held by the Fund at a particular point in time or the best possible valuation of the current portfolio. Therefore, it should not be viewed as a “real-time” update of the NAV per share of the Fund, which is calculated only once a day. The quotations of certain Fund holdings may not be updated during U.S. trading hours if such holdings do not trade in the United States. Neither the Fund, the Adviser, the Sub-Advisers or any of their affiliates are involved in, or responsible for, the calculation or dissemination of such IIVs and make no warranty as to their accuracy.

The Trust reserves the right to adjust the share price of the Fund in the future to maintain convenient trading ranges for investors. Any adjustments would be accomplished through stock splits or reverse stock splits, which would have no effect on the net assets of the Fund.

As in the case of other publicly traded securities, brokers’ commissions on transactions will be based on negotiated commission rates at customary levels.

The base and trading currencies of the Fund is the U.S. dollar. The base currency is the currency in which the Fund’s NAV per share is calculated and the trading currency is the currency in which shares of the Fund are listed and traded on the Exchange.

## MANAGEMENT OF THE TRUST

**Board Responsibilities.** The management and affairs of the Trust and its series, including the Fund described in this SAI, are overseen by the Trust's Board of Trustees (the "Board"). The Board elects the officers of the Trust who are responsible for administering the day-to-day operations of the Trust and the Fund. The Board has approved contracts, as described below, under which certain companies provide essential services to the Trust.

Like most funds, the day-to-day business of the Trust, including the management of risk, is performed by third party service providers, such as the Adviser, the Sub-Advisers, the Distributor and the Trust's administrators. The Trustees are responsible for overseeing the Trust's service providers and, thus, have oversight responsibility with respect to risk management performed by those service providers. Risk management seeks to identify and address risks, *i.e.*, events or circumstances that could have material adverse effects on the business, operations, shareholder services, investment performance or reputation of the Fund. The Fund and its service providers employ a variety of processes, procedures and controls to identify many of those possible events or circumstances, to lessen the probability of their occurrence and/or to mitigate the effects of such events or circumstances if they do occur. Each service provider is responsible for one or more discrete aspects of the Trust's business (*e.g.*, the Sub-Advisers are responsible for the day-to-day management of the Fund's portfolio investments) and, consequently, for managing the risks associated with that business. The Board has emphasized to the Fund's service providers the importance of maintaining vigorous risk management.

The Trustees' role in risk oversight begins before the inception of the Fund, at which time certain of the Fund's service providers present the Board with information concerning the investment objectives, strategies and risks of the Fund as well as proposed investment limitations for the Fund. Additionally, the Fund's Adviser provides the Board with an overview of, among other things, its investment philosophy, brokerage practices and compliance infrastructure. Thereafter, the Board continues its oversight function as various personnel, including the Trust's Chief Compliance Officer, as well as personnel of the Sub-Advisers and other service providers such as the Fund's independent accountants, make periodic reports to the Audit Committee or to the Board with respect to various aspects of risk management. The Board and the Audit Committee oversee efforts by management and service providers to manage risks to which the Fund may be exposed.

The Board is responsible for overseeing the nature, extent and quality of the services provided to the Fund by the Adviser and the Sub-Advisers and receives information about those services at its regular meetings. In addition, on an annual basis, in connection with its consideration of whether to renew the investment advisory agreement between the Trust, on behalf of the Fund, and the Adviser (the "Advisory Agreement") and each investment sub-advisory agreement between the Adviser and the Sub-Advisers (each, a "Sub-Advisory Agreement"), the Board meets with the Adviser and the Sub-Advisers to review such services. Among other things, the Board regularly considers the Adviser and each Sub-Adviser's adherence to the Fund's investment restrictions and compliance with various Fund policies and procedures and with applicable securities regulations. The Board also reviews information about the Fund's performance and the Fund's investments, including, for example, portfolio holdings schedules.

The Trust's Chief Compliance Officer reports regularly to the Board to review and discuss compliance issues and Fund and Adviser risk assessments. At least annually, the Trust's Chief Compliance Officer provides the Board with a report reviewing the adequacy and effectiveness of the Trust's policies and procedures and those of its service providers, including the Adviser and the Sub-Advisers. The report addresses the operation of the policies and procedures of the Trust and each service provider since the date of the last report; any material changes to the policies and procedures since the date of the last report; any recommendations for material changes to the policies and procedures; and any material compliance matters since the date of the last report.

The Board receives reports from the Fund's service providers regarding operational risks and risks related to the valuation and liquidity of portfolio securities. The Board has also established a Valuation Committee that is responsible for implementing the Trust's Pricing Procedures and providing reports to the Board concerning investments for which market quotations are not readily available. Annually, the independent registered public accounting firm reviews with the Audit Committee its audit of the Fund's financial statements, focusing on major areas of risk encountered by the Fund and noting any significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in the Fund's internal controls. Additionally, in connection with its oversight function, the Board oversees Fund management's implementation of disclosure controls and procedures, which are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Trust in its periodic reports with the SEC are recorded,

processed, summarized, and reported within the required time periods. The Board also oversees the Trust's internal controls over financial reporting, which comprise policies and procedures designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of the Trust's financial reporting and the preparation of the Trust's financial statements.

From their review of these reports and discussions with the Adviser, the Sub-Advisers, the Chief Compliance Officer, the independent registered public accounting firm and other service providers, the Board and the Audit Committee learn in detail about the material risks of the Fund, thereby facilitating a dialogue about how management and service providers identify and mitigate those risks.

The Board recognizes that not all risks that may affect the Fund can be identified and/or quantified, that it may not be practical or cost-effective to eliminate or mitigate certain risks, that it may be necessary to bear certain risks (such as investment-related risks) to achieve the Fund's goals, and that the processes, procedures and controls employed to address certain risks may be limited in their effectiveness. Moreover, reports received by the Trustees as to risk management matters are typically summaries of the relevant information. Most of the Fund's investment management and business affairs are carried out by or through the Fund's Adviser and other service providers each of which has an independent interest in risk management but whose policies and the methods by which one or more risk management functions are carried out may differ from the Fund's and each other's in the setting of priorities, the resources available or the effectiveness of relevant controls. As a result of the foregoing and other factors, the Board's ability to monitor and manage risk, as a practical matter, is subject to limitations.

**Members of the Board.** There are four members of the Board, three of whom are not interested persons of the Trust, as that term is defined in the 1940 Act ("Independent Trustees"). Richard Hogan, the sole interested Trustee, serves as Chairman of the Board, and David Mahle serves as the Trust's lead Independent Trustee. As lead Independent Trustee, Mr. Mahle acts as a spokesperson for the Independent Trustees in between meetings of the Board, serves as a liaison for the Independent Trustees with the Trust's service providers, officers, and legal counsel to discuss ideas informally, and participates as needed in setting the agenda for meetings of the Board and separate meetings or executive sessions of the Independent Trustees. Independent Trustees comprise 75% of the Board. The Trust has determined its leadership structure is appropriate given the specific characteristics and circumstances of the Trust. The Trust made this determination in consideration of, among other things, the fact that the Independent Trustees constitute a super-majority of the Board, the number of Independent Trustees that constitute the Board, the amount of assets under management in the Trust, and the number of funds overseen by the Board. The Board also believes that its leadership structure facilitates the orderly and efficient flow of information to the Independent Trustees from Fund management.

**Trustees.** Set forth below is information about each of the persons currently serving as a Trustee of the Trust. The address of each Trustee of the Trust is c/o Exchange Listed Funds Trust, 10900 Hefner Pointe Drive, Suite 207, Oklahoma City, Oklahoma 73120.

Name and Year of Birth	Position(s) Held with the Trust	Term of Office and Length of Time Served <sup>1</sup>	Principal Occupation(s) During Past 5 Years	Number of Portfolios in Fund Complex <sup>2</sup> Overseen By Trustee	Other Directorships Held by Trustee
<b>Interested Trustee</b>					
Richard Hogan (1961)	Trustee and Secretary	Since 2012	Director, Exchange Traded Concepts, LLC (since 2011); Private Investor (since 2002); Secretary, Exchange Traded Concepts Trust (since 2011); Managing Member, Yorkville ETF Advisors (2011-2016).	7	Board Member, Peconic Land Trust of Suffolk County, NY.

Name and Year of Birth	Position(s) Held with the Trust	Term of Office and Length of Time Served <sup>1</sup>	Principal Occupation(s) During Past 5 Years	Number of Portfolios in Fund Complex <sup>2</sup> Overseen By Trustee	Other Directorships Held by Trustee
<b>Independent Trustees</b>					
Timothy J. Jacoby (1952)	Trustee	Since 2014	Senior Partner, Deloitte & Touche LLP, Private Equity/Hedge Fund/Mutual Fund Services Practice (2000-2014).	16	Independent Trustee, Exchange Traded Concepts Trust (9 portfolios) — Trustee; Audit Committee Chair, Perth Mint Physical Gold ETF (since 2018); Edward Jones Money Market Fund (since 2017); Independent Trustee, Source ETF Trust (2014-2015).
David M. Mahle (1943)	Trustee	Since 2012	Consultant, Jones Day (2012-2015); Of Counsel, Jones Day (2008-2011); Partner, Jones Day (1988-2008).	16	Independent Trustee, Exchange Traded Concepts Trust (9 portfolios) (since 2012); Independent Trustee, Source ETF Trust (2014-2015).
Linda Petrone (1962)	Trustee	Since 2019	Founding Partner, Sage Search Advisors (since 2012).	16	Independent Trustee, Exchange Traded Concepts Trust (9 portfolios) (since 2019).

<sup>1</sup> Each Trustee shall serve during the continued life of the Trust until he or she dies, resigns, is declared bankrupt or incompetent by a court of competent jurisdiction, or is removed.

<sup>2</sup> The Fund Complex includes each series of the Trust and of Exchange Traded Concepts Trust.

**Individual Trustee Qualifications.** The Trust has concluded that each of the Trustees should serve on the Board because of their ability to review and understand information about the Fund provided to them by management, to identify and request other information they may deem relevant to the performance of their duties, to question management and other service providers regarding material factors bearing on the management and administration of the Fund, and to exercise their business judgment in a manner that serves the best interests of the Fund's shareholders. The Trust has concluded that each of the Trustees should serve as a Trustee based on their own experience, qualifications, attributes and skills as described below.

The Trust has concluded that Mr. Hogan should serve as a Trustee because of his 26+ years of experience in senior level ETF management which began at Spear, Leeds & Kellogg (“SLK”) in 1987, becoming a Limited Partner in 1990 and a Managing Director in 1992. As Managing Director of the Index Derivatives Group, he established trading operations in Chicago, Singapore and London as well as other satellite operations and nurtured Exchange Traded Funds (“ETFs”) as a Specialist in SPDRs, WEBS, Sector SPDRs, iShares and other ETFs. Mr. Hogan became a Managing Director of Goldman Sachs when SLK was merged and played a critical role in combining the ETF operations of SLK, Goldman and Hull Trading (a prior Goldman acquisition). He has worked closely with Exchange staff, issuers, index providers and others in conceiving, designing, developing, launching, marketing and trading new ETFs, and championed the idea of a fixed income ETF. Mr. Hogan is a Founder and Director of the Adviser.

The Trust has concluded that Mr. Jacoby should serve as a Trustee because of the experience he has gained from over 25 years in or serving the investment management industry. Until his retirement in June 2014, Mr. Jacoby served as a partner at the audit and professional services firm Deloitte & Touche LLP, where he had worked since 2000, providing various services to asset management firms that manage mutual funds, hedge funds and private equity funds. Prior to that, Mr. Jacoby held various senior positions at financial services firms. Additionally, he served as a partner at Ernst & Young LLP. Mr. Jacoby is a Certified Public Accountant.

The Trust has concluded that Mr. Mahle should serve as a Trustee because of the experience he has gained as an attorney in the investment management industry of a major law firm, representing exchange-traded funds and other investment companies as well as their sponsors and advisers and his knowledge and experience in investment management law and the financial services industry. Mr. Mahle is also a professor of law at Fordham Law School, where he lectures on investment companies and investment adviser regulations.

The Trust has concluded that Ms. Petrone should serve as a Trustee because of the experience she has gained serving in leadership roles in the equity derivatives group of a large financial institution, as well as her knowledge of the financial services industry.

In its periodic assessment of the effectiveness of the Board, the Board considers the complementary individual skills and experience of the individual Trustees primarily in the broader context of the Board’s overall composition so that the Board, as a body, possesses the appropriate (and appropriately diverse) skills and experience to oversee the business of the Fund.

**Officers.** Set forth below is information about each of the persons currently serving as officers of the Trust. The address of J. Garrett Stevens, Richard Hogan, and James J. Baker Jr. is c/o Exchange Listed Funds Trust, 10900 Hefner Pointe Drive, Suite 207, Oklahoma City, Oklahoma 73120, the address of Christopher W. Roleke is Foreside Management Services, LLC, 10 High Street, Suite 302, Boston, Massachusetts 02110, and the address of Patrick Keniston is Foreside Fund Officer Services, LLC, 3 Canal Plaza, Suite 100, Portland, Maine 04101.

Name and Year of Birth	Position(s) Held with the Trust	Term of Office and Length of Time Served <sup>1</sup>	Principal Occupation(s) During Past 5 Years
J. Garrett Stevens (1979)	President	Since 2012	Investment Adviser/Vice President, T.S. Phillips Investments, Inc. (since 2000); Chief Executive Officer, Exchange Traded Concepts, LLC (since 2009); Chief Executive Officer and Secretary (2009-2011), President (since 2011), Exchange Traded Concepts Trust; and President, Exchange Listed Funds Trust (since 2012).
Richard Hogan (1961)	Trustee and Secretary	Since 2012	Director, Exchange Traded Concepts, LLC (since 2011); Private Investor (since 2003); Secretary, Exchange Traded Concepts Trust (since 2011); Trustee and Secretary,

Name and Year of Birth	Position(s) Held with the Trust	Term of Office and Length of Time Served <sup>1</sup>	Principal Occupation(s) During Past 5 Years
			Exchange Listed Funds Trust (since 2012); Board Member, Peconic Land Trust (2012 to 2016); Managing Member, Yorkville ETF Advisors (2011 to 2016).
Christopher W. Roleke (1972)	Treasurer	Since 2012	Managing Director/Fund Principal Financial Officer, Foreside Management Services, LLC (since 2011).
James J. Baker Jr. (1951)	Assistant Treasurer	Since 2015	Managing Partner, Exchange Traded Concepts, LLC (since 2011); Managing Partner, Yorkville ETF Advisors (2012 to 2016); Vice President, Goldman Sachs (2000 to 2011).
Patrick Keniston (1964)	Chief Compliance Officer	Since 2017	Managing Director, Foreside Fund Officer Services, LLC (since 2008).

<sup>1</sup> Each officer serves at the pleasure of the Board of Trustees.

**Committees.** The Board has established the following standing committees, which are chaired by and comprised of Independent Trustees:

Audit Committee. The Board has an Audit Committee that is composed of each of the Independent Trustees of the Trust. The Audit Committee operates under a written charter approved by the Board. The principal responsibilities of the Audit Committee include: recommending which firm to engage as the Fund’s independent registered public accounting firm and whether to terminate this relationship; reviewing the independent registered public accounting firm’s compensation, the proposed scope and terms of its engagement, and the firm’s independence; pre-approving audit and non-audit services provided by the Fund’s independent registered public accounting firm to the Trust and certain other affiliated entities; serving as a channel of communication between the independent registered public accounting firm and the Trustees; reviewing the results of each external audit, including any qualifications in the independent registered public accounting firm’s opinion, any related management letter, management’s responses to recommendations made by the independent registered public accounting firm in connection with the audit, reports submitted to the Committee by the internal auditing department of the Trust’s administrators that are material to the Trust as a whole, if any, and management’s responses to any such reports; reviewing the Fund’s audited financial statements and considering any significant disputes between the Trust’s management and the independent registered public accounting firm that arose in connection with the preparation of those financial statements; considering, in consultation with the independent registered public accounting firm and the Trust’s senior internal accounting executive, if any, the independent registered public accounting firms’ report on the adequacy of the Trust’s internal financial controls; reviewing, in consultation with the Fund’s independent registered public accounting firm, major changes regarding auditing and accounting principles and practices to be followed when preparing the Fund’s financial statements; and other audit related matters. The Audit Committee meets periodically, as necessary, and met seven (7) times during the most recently completed fiscal year.

Governance and Nominating Committee. The Board has a Governance and Nominating Committee that is composed of each of the Independent Trustees of the Trust. The Governance and Nominating Committee operates under a written charter approved by the Board. The principal responsibility of the Governance and Nominating Committee is to consider, recommend and nominate candidates to fill vacancies on the Trust’s Board, if any. The Governance and Nominating Committee generally will not consider nominees recommended by shareholders. The Governance and Nominating Committee meets periodically, as necessary, and met one (1) time during the most recently completed fiscal year.

Valuation Committee. In addition to the foregoing standing committees of the Board, the Trust has a Valuation Committee that may be comprised of representatives from the Adviser, representatives from the Trust’s administrators and/or members of the Board of Trustees. The Valuation Committee operates under procedures approved by the Board. The Valuation

Committee is responsible for the valuation and revaluation of any portfolio investments for which market quotations or prices are not readily available. The Valuation Committee meets periodically, as necessary.

**Fund Shares Owned by Board Members.** The following table shows the dollar amount ranges of each Trustee’s “beneficial ownership” of shares of the Fund and each other series of the Trust as of the end of the most recently completed calendar year. Dollar amount ranges disclosed are established by the SEC. “Beneficial ownership” is determined in accordance with Rule 16a-1(a)(2) under the Exchange Act. As of October 1, 2019, the Trustees and officers own less than 1% of the outstanding shares of the Trust.

Name	Dollar Range of Fund Shares Owned	Aggregate Dollar Range of Shares Owned in Series of the Trust
<b>Interested Trustee</b>		
Richard Hogan	None	None
<b>Independent Trustees</b>		
Timothy J. Jacoby	None	None
David M. Mahle	None	None
Linda Petrone	None	None

**Trustee Compensation.** Effective October 1, 2018, as compensation for service on the Trust’s Board, each Independent Trustee is entitled to receive a \$40,000 annual base fee, as well as a \$3,000 fee for each in-person meeting and a \$1,000 fee for each telephonic meeting. In addition, Mr. Jacoby is entitled to a \$5,000 annual fee for his service as Audit Committee chair, and Mr. Mahle is entitled to a \$5,000 annual fee for his service as Lead Independent Trustee. Prior to October 1, 2018, as compensation for service on the Trust’s Board, each Independent Trustee was entitled to receive a \$35,000 base fee, as well as a \$2,500 fee for each in-person meeting and a \$1,000 fee for each telephonic meeting. In addition, Mr. Jacoby was entitled to a \$5,000 annual fee for his service as Audit Committee chair.

The following table sets forth the compensation paid to the Trustees of the Trust for the fiscal year ended June 30, 2019. Independent Trustee fees are paid from the unitary fee paid to the Adviser by the Fund. Trustee compensation does not include reimbursed out-of-pocket expenses in connection with attendance at meetings.

Name	Aggregate Compensation	Pension or Retirement Benefits Accrued as Part of Fund Expenses	Estimated Annual Benefits Upon Retirement	Total Compensation from the Trust and Fund Complex <sup>1</sup>
<b>Interested Trustee</b>				
Richard Hogan	\$0	n/a	n/a	\$0
<b>Independent Trustees</b>				
Timothy J. Jacoby	\$59,750	n/a	n/a	\$122,500 for service on (2) boards
David M. Mahle	\$59,500	n/a	n/a	\$122,000 for service on (2) boards
Kurt Wolfgruber <sup>2</sup>	\$46,750	n/a	n/a	\$93,500 for service on (2) boards

<sup>1</sup> The Fund complex includes each series of the Trust and Exchange Traded Concepts Trust.

<sup>2</sup> Kurt Wolfgruber served as an Independent Trustee of the Trust and Exchange Traded Concepts Trust until June 17, 2019.

## CODES OF ETHICS

The Trust, the Adviser, the Sub-Advisers and Foreside Financial Group, LLC (on behalf of the Distributor and its affiliates) have each adopted a code of ethics pursuant to Rule 17j-1 of the 1940 Act. These codes of ethics are designed to prevent affiliated persons of the Trust, the Adviser, the Sub-Advisers and Foreside Financial Group (on behalf of the Distributor,

Foreside Management Services, LLC and Foreside Fund Officer Services, LLC) from engaging in deceptive, manipulative or fraudulent activities in connection with securities held or to be acquired by the Fund. These codes of ethics permit, subject to certain conditions, personnel of each of those entities to invest in securities, including those that may be purchased or held by the Fund.

There can be no assurance that the codes of ethics will be effective in preventing such activities. Each code of ethics, filed as exhibits to this registration statement, may be examined at the office of the SEC in Washington, D.C. or on the Internet at the SEC’s website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

## PROXY VOTING POLICIES

The Board has delegated the responsibility to vote proxies for securities held in the Fund’s portfolio to the Adviser. Proxies for the portfolio securities are voted in accordance with the Adviser’s proxy voting policies and procedures, which are set forth in Appendix B to this SAI. Information regarding how the Fund voted proxies relating to its portfolio securities during the most recent twelve-month period ended June 30 is available: (1) without charge by calling 844-880-3837, and (2) on the SEC’s website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

## INVESTMENT ADVISORY AND OTHER SERVICES

*Adviser.* Exchange Traded Concepts, LLC (“ETC”), an Oklahoma limited liability company located at 10900 Hefner Pointe Drive, Suite 207, Oklahoma City, Oklahoma 73120, its primary place of business, and 295 Madison Avenue, New York, New York, 10017, serves as the investment adviser to the Fund. The Adviser is majority owned by Cottonwood ETF Holdings LLC.

Under the Advisory Agreement, the Adviser provides investment advisory services to the Fund primarily in the form of oversight of the Sub-Advisers, including daily monitoring of the purchase and sale of securities of the Sub-Advisers and regular review of each Sub-Adviser’s performance. The Adviser arranges for transfer agency, custody, fund administration and accounting, and other non-distribution related services necessary for the Fund to operate. The Adviser administers the Fund’s business affairs, provides office facilities and equipment and certain clerical, bookkeeping and administrative services, and provides its officers and employees to serve as officers or Trustees of the Trust. For the services it provides to the Fund, the Fund pays the Adviser a fee, which is calculated daily and paid monthly, at an annual rate of 1.25%.

Under the Advisory Agreement, the Adviser has agreed to pay all expenses incurred by the Trust except for the advisory fee, interest, taxes, brokerage commissions and other expenses incurred in placing or settlement of orders for the purchase and sale of securities and other investment instruments, acquired fund fees and expenses, accrued deferred tax liability, extraordinary expenses, and distribution fees and expenses paid by the Trust under any distribution plan adopted pursuant to Rule 12b-1 under the 1940 Act.

The table below sets forth the advisory fees paid by the Fund and the Predecessor Fund for the last three fiscal years. The information shown for the fiscal years ended June 30, 2018 and June 30, 2017 includes advisory fees collected and expenses waived by the Predecessor Fund’s investment adviser prior to June 22, 2018.

Aggregate Advisory Fees			Advisory Fees (Waived) and/or Recaptured			Net Advisory Fees Paid		
2019	2018	2017	2019	2018	2017	2019	2018	2017
\$2,051,479	\$1,754,421	\$2,160,078	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$2,051,479	\$1,754,421	\$2,160,078

After the initial two-year term, the continuance of the Advisory Agreement must be specifically approved at least annually: (i) by the vote of the Trustees or by a vote of the shareholders of the Fund; and (ii) by the vote of a majority of the Trustees who are not parties to the Advisory Agreement or “interested persons” or of any party thereto, cast in person at a meeting called for the purpose of voting on such approval. The Advisory Agreement will terminate automatically in the event of its assignment, and is terminable at any time without penalty by the Trustees of the Trust or, with respect to the Fund, by a majority of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund, or by the Adviser on not more than sixty (60) days’ nor less than

thirty (30) days' written notice to the Trust. As used in the Advisory Agreement, the terms "majority of the outstanding voting securities," "interested persons" and "assignment" have the same meaning as such terms in the 1940 Act.

The Trust and the Adviser have obtained exemptive relief, *In the Matter of Exchange Traded Concepts Trust, et al.*, Investment Company Act Release Nos. 31453 (February 10, 2015) (Notice) and 31502 (March 10, 2015) (the "Order"), pursuant to which the Adviser may, with Board approval but without shareholder approval, change or select new sub-advisers, materially amend the terms of an agreement with a sub-adviser (including an increase in its fee), or continue the employment of a sub-adviser after an event that would otherwise cause the automatic termination of services, subject to the conditions of the Order. Shareholders will be notified of any sub-adviser changes.

*Sub-Advisers.* The Adviser has retained MacKay Shields LLC and WhiteStar Asset Management Asset LLC to serve as sub-advisers to the Fund.

MacKay Shields is a Delaware limited liability company incorporated in 1969 with its principal offices at 1345 Avenue of the Americas, New York, New York 10105. MacKay Shields is a wholly-owned, fully autonomous subsidiary of New York Life. The Adviser has entered into a sub-advisory agreement with MacKay Shields with respect to the Fund (the "MacKay Shields Agreement"). Under the MacKay Shields Agreement, MacKay Shields is responsible for selecting investments for its allocated portion of the Fund's assets in accordance with the Fund's investment objective, policies, and restrictions. For the services MacKay Shields provides, the Adviser pays MacKay Shields a fee, calculated daily and paid monthly, at an annual rate of 0.35% of the Fund's average daily net assets managed by MacKay Shields.

WhiteStar is a Delaware limited liability company located at 300 Crescent Court, Suite 200, Dallas, TX 75201. WhiteStar is wholly-owned by TCA Holdco LLC, a Delaware limited liability company. TCA Holdco LLC is indirectly owned by Pine Brook Capital Partners II, L.P., a Delaware limited liability company. The Adviser has entered into a sub-advisory agreement with WhiteStar with respect to the Fund (the "WhiteStar Agreement"). Under the WhiteStar Agreement, responsible for selecting investments for its allocated portion of the Fund's assets in accordance with the Fund's investment objective, policies and restrictions. WhiteStar also is responsible for trading portfolio securities and other investment instruments on behalf of the Fund and selecting broker-dealers to execute purchase and sale transactions, subject to the supervision of the Adviser and the Board. For the services WhiteStar provides, the Adviser pays the Sub-Adviser a fee, calculated daily and paid monthly, at an annual rate of 0.35% of the Fund's average daily net assets managed by WhiteStar.

The following table sets forth the amount of compensation paid to the Fund's and Predecessor Fund's sub-advisers during the last three fiscal years:

<b>Sub-Advisory Fees Paid for the Fiscal Years Ended June 30,</b>		
<b>2019<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>2018<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>2017<sup>(2)</sup></b>
\$592,381	\$1,199,462	\$1,475,008

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes amounts paid to MacKay Shields, to PhaseCapital LP (the sub-adviser to the Fund from September 4, 2018 through April 15, 2019), and to Peritus I Asset Management, LLC (the sub-adviser to the Fund through September 4, 2018 and to the Predecessor Fund).

<sup>(2)</sup> Amount paid to Peritus I Asset Management, LLC.

After the initial two-year term, the continuance of the MacKay Shields Agreement and WhiteStar Agreement must be specifically approved with respect to the Fund at least annually: (i) by the vote of the Trustees or by a vote of the shareholders of the Fund; and (ii) by the vote of a majority of the Trustees who are not parties to the Sub-Advisory Agreement or "interested persons" or of any party thereto, cast in person at a meeting called for the purpose of voting on such approval. Each of the MacKay Shields Agreement and WhiteStar Agreement will terminate automatically in the event of its assignment, and is terminable at any time without penalty by the Trustees of the Trust or, with respect to the Fund, by a majority of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund. The MacKay Shields Agreement and WhiteStar Agreement also may be terminated by the Adviser upon sixty (60) days' written notice to MacKay Shields or WhiteStar, respectively, and by MacKay Shields or WhiteStar, respectively, upon sixty (60) day's written notice to the Adviser and the Board. As used in the MacKay Shields Agreement and WhiteStar Agreement, the terms "majority of the outstanding voting securities," "interested persons" and "assignment" have the same meaning as such terms in the 1940 Act.

## THE PORTFOLIO MANAGERS

Michael DePalma, Michael Ning, Gibran Mahmud, Barry Boland, and Nathan Hall serve as portfolio managers of the Fund. This section includes information about each portfolio manager, including information about other accounts each portfolio manager manages and each portfolio manager's compensation.

**Portfolio Manager Compensation.** Mr. DePalma and Mr. Ning are compensated by MacKay Shields and do not receive any compensation directly from the Fund or the Adviser. MacKay Shields pays each portfolio manager a salary plus a discretionary bonus, which is based on the overall profitability of MacKay Shields. In addition, to the extent that a portfolio manager is a partner in MacKay Shields, he is potentially entitled to an additional share of MacKay Shields' profits in any given calendar year.

Mr. Mahmud, Mr. Hall, and Mr. Boland are compensated by WhiteStar and do not receive any compensation directly from the Fund or the Adviser. WhiteStar pays each portfolio manager a salary plus a discretionary bonus, which is based on the overall profitability of WhiteStar.

**Fund Shares Owned by the Portfolio Managers.** The Fund is required to show the dollar range of each portfolio manager's "beneficial ownership" of shares of the Fund as of the end of the most recently completed fiscal year. Dollar amount ranges disclosed are established by the SEC. "Beneficial ownership" is determined in accordance with Rule 16a-1(a)(2) under the Exchange Act. As of June 30, 2019, the portfolio managers did not beneficially own shares of the Fund.

**Other Accounts Managed by the Portfolio Managers.** In addition to the Fund, the portfolio managers are responsible for the day-to-day management of certain other accounts, as follows:

Name	Registered Investment Companies*		Other Pooled Investment Vehicles*		Other Accounts*	
	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)
Michael DePalma	1	\$140	0	\$0	0	\$0
Michael Ning	1	\$140	0	\$0	0	\$0
Gibran Mahmud	1	\$140	12	\$5,800	0	\$0
Barry Boland	1	\$140	12	\$5,800	0	\$0
Nathan Hall	1	\$140	12	\$5,800	0	\$0

\* Information for Messrs. DePalma and Ning is provided as of June 30, 2019. Information for Messrs. Mahmud, Boland, and Hall provided as of September 30, 2019. None of the accounts managed by the portfolio managers are subject to performance-based advisory fees.

## Conflicts of Interest

The portfolio managers' management of "other accounts" may give rise to potential conflicts of interest in connection with the management of the Fund's investments, on the one hand, and the investments of the portfolio managers' other accounts, on the other. The other accounts may have the same investment objectives as the Fund. Therefore, a potential conflict of interest may arise as a result of the identical investment objectives, whereby the portfolio managers could favor one account over another. Another potential conflict could include the portfolio managers' knowledge about the size, timing, and possible market impact of Fund trades, whereby the portfolio managers could use this information to the advantage of other accounts and to the disadvantage of the Fund. However, each Sub-Adviser has established policies and procedures to ensure that the purchase and sale of securities among all accounts managed by the portfolio managers are fairly and equitably allocated.

## THE DISTRIBUTOR

The Trust and Foreside Fund Services, LLC (the “Distributor”) are parties to an amended and restated distribution agreement (“Distribution Agreement”) whereby the Distributor acts as principal underwriter for the Trust’s shares and distributes the shares of the Fund. Shares of the Fund are continuously offered for sale by the Distributor only in Creation Units. Each Creation Unit is made up of at least 50,000 shares. The Distributor will not distribute shares of the Fund in amounts less than a Creation Unit. The principal business address of the Distributor is Three Canal Plaza, Suite 100, Portland, Maine 04101.

The Distributor will deliver prospectuses and, upon request, Statements of Additional Information to persons purchasing Creation Units and will maintain records of orders placed with it. The Distributor is a broker-dealer registered under the Exchange Act and a member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (“FINRA”).

The Distributor may enter into agreements with securities dealers wishing to purchase Creation Units if such securities dealers qualify as Authorized Participants (as discussed in “Procedures for Creation of Creation Units” below).

The Distribution Agreement will continue for two years from its effective date and is renewable thereafter. The continuance of the Distribution Agreement with respect to the Fund must be specifically approved at least annually (i) by the vote of the Trustees or by a vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund and (ii) by the vote of a majority of the Trustees who are not “interested persons” of the Trust and have no direct or indirect financial interest in the operations of the Distribution Agreement or any related agreement, cast in person at a meeting called for the purpose of voting on such approval. The Distribution Agreement is terminable without penalty by the Trust on 60 days’ written notice when authorized either by majority vote of the Fund’s outstanding voting shares or by a vote of a majority of its Board (including a majority of the Independent Trustees), or by the Distributor on 60 days’ written notice, and will automatically terminate in the event of its assignment. The Distributor also may provide trade order processing services pursuant to a services agreement.

**Distribution and Service Plan.** The Trust has adopted a Distribution and Service Plan (the “Plan”) in accordance with the provisions of Rule 12b-1 under the 1940 Act, which regulates circumstances under which an investment company may directly or indirectly bear expenses relating to the distribution of its shares. No payments pursuant to the Plan will be made during the twelve (12) month period from the date of this SAI. Thereafter, 12b-1 fees may only be imposed after approval by the Board. Continuance of the Plan must be approved annually by a majority of the Trustees of the Trust and by a majority of the Trustees who are not interested persons (as defined in the 1940 Act) of the Trust and have no direct or indirect financial interest in the Plan or in any agreements related to the Plan (“Qualified Trustees”). The Plan requires that quarterly written reports of amounts spent under the Plan and the purposes of such expenditures be furnished to and reviewed by the Trustees. The Plan may not be amended to increase materially the amount that may be spent thereunder without approval by a majority of the outstanding shares of any class of the Fund that is affected by such increase. All material amendments of the Plan will require approval by a majority of the Trustees of the Trust and of the Qualified Trustees.

The Plan provides that the Fund pays the Distributor an annual fee of up to a maximum of 0.25% of the average daily net assets of the shares of the Fund. Under the Plan, the Distributor may make payments pursuant to written agreements to financial institutions and intermediaries such as banks, savings and loan associations and insurance companies including, without limit, investment counselors, broker-dealers and the Distributor’s affiliates and subsidiaries (collectively, “Agents”) as compensation for services and reimbursement of expenses incurred in connection with distribution assistance. The Plan is characterized as a compensation plan since the distribution fee will be paid to the Distributor without regard to the distribution expenses incurred by the Distributor or the amount of payments made to other financial institutions and intermediaries. The Trust intends to operate the Plan in accordance with its terms and with the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (“FINRA”) rules concerning sales charges.

Under the Plan, subject to the limitations of applicable law and regulations, the Fund is authorized to compensate the Distributor up to the maximum amount to finance any activity primarily intended to result in the sale of Creation Units of the Fund or for providing or arranging for others to provide shareholder services and for the maintenance of shareholder accounts. Such activities may include, but are not limited to: (i) delivering copies of the Fund’s then current reports, prospectuses, notices, and similar materials, to prospective purchasers of Creation Units; (ii) marketing and promotional services, including advertising; (iii) paying the costs of and compensating others, including Authorized Participants with

whom the Distributor has entered into written Authorized Participant Agreements, for performing shareholder servicing on behalf of the Fund; (iv) compensating certain Authorized Participants for providing assistance in distributing the Creation Units of the Fund, including the travel and communication expenses and salaries and/or commissions of sales personnel in connection with the distribution of the Creation Units of the Fund; (v) payments to financial institutions and intermediaries such as banks, savings and loan associations, insurance companies and investment counselors, broker-dealers, mutual fund supermarkets and the affiliates and subsidiaries of the Trust’s service providers as compensation for services or reimbursement of expenses incurred in connection with distribution assistance; (vi) facilitating communications with beneficial owners of shares of the Fund, including the cost of providing (or paying others to provide) services to beneficial owners of shares of the Fund, including, but not limited to, assistance in answering inquiries related to shareholder accounts, and (vii) such other services and obligations as are set forth in the Distribution Agreement.

**THE ADMINISTRATORS**

The Bank of New York Mellon (“BNY Mellon”) and UMB Fund Services (“UMBFS”) serve as administrators to the Fund. For services provided under the administration agreements with the Trust, BNY Mellon and UMBFS are each entitled to a fee based on assets under management, paid by the Adviser, subject to a minimum fee.

The following table sets forth the amounts paid by the Predecessor Fund to BNY Mellon, the administrator, custodian and transfer agent to the Predecessor Fund, for the specified periods:

Fiscal Year Ended June 30, 2018 <sup>(1)</sup>	Fiscal Year Ended June 30, 2017
\$40,016	\$49,090

(1) Reflects amounts paid by the Predecessor Fund until June 22, 2018. Effective June 22, 2018, fees paid to the Fund’s administrators are paid from the unitary fee paid to the Adviser, as described above.

**THE CUSTODIAN**

BNY Mellon serves as the custodian of the Fund (the “Custodian”). The Custodian holds cash, securities and other assets of the Fund as required by the 1940 Act.

**THE TRANSFER AGENT**

BNY Mellon serves as transfer agent and dividend disbursing agent of the Fund.

**COMPLIANCE SERVICES**

Under the Fund CCO Agreement (the “CCO Agreement”) with the Trust, Foreside Fund Officer Services, LLC, an affiliate of the Distributor, provides a Chief Compliance Officer (“CCO”) as well as certain additional compliance support functions (“Compliance Services”). The CCO Agreement with respect to the Fund continues in effect until terminated. The CCO Agreement is terminable with or without cause and without penalty by the Board or by Foreside Fund Officer Services, LLC with respect to the Fund on 60 days’ written notice to the other party. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Board will have the right to remove the CCO at any time, with or without cause, without the payment of any penalty.

**LEGAL COUNSEL**

Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP, 1111 Pennsylvania Avenue NW, Washington, DC 20004, serves as legal counsel to the Trust.

**INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

Cohen & Company, Ltd., 151 N. Franklin Street, Suite 575, Chicago, IL 60606, serves as the independent registered public accounting firm for the Fund.

## SECURITIES LENDING

The dollar amounts of income and fees and compensation paid related to the securities lending activities of the Fund during the most recent fiscal year were as follows:

<b>Gross income from securities lending activities</b>	\$6,616.67
Fees and/or compensation for securities lending activities and related services:	
Fees paid to securities lending agent from revenue split	\$(2,884.35)
Fees paid for any cash collateral management service (including fees deducted from a pooled cash collateral reinvestment vehicle) that are not included in the revenue split	\$0
Administrative fees not included in revenue split	\$0
Indemnification fee not included in revenue split	\$0
Rebate (paid to borrower)	\$(3,104.90)
Amounts due from borrower	\$2,257.05
Other fees not included in revenue split (specify)	\$0
<b>Aggregate fees/compensation for securities lending activities</b>	<b>\$(3,732.20)</b>
<b>Net income from securities lending activities</b>	<b>\$2,884.47</b>

The Fund participates in a securities lending program offered by The Bank of New York Mellon (“BNYM”) (the “Program”), providing for the lending of securities to qualified brokers. Securities lending income includes earnings of such temporary cash investments, plus or minus any rebate to a borrower. These earnings (after any rebate) are then divided between BNYM, as a fee for its services under the Program, and the Fund, according to agreed-upon rates. Collateral on all securities loaned is accepted in cash and is maintained at a minimum level of 102% (105% in the case of certain foreign securities) of the market value, plus interest, if applicable, of investments on loan. It is the Fund’s policy to obtain additional collateral from or return excess collateral to the borrower by the end of the next business day, following the valuation date of the securities loaned. Therefore, the value of the collateral held may be temporarily less than the value of the securities on loan. Lending securities entails a risk of loss to the Fund if and to the extent that the market value of the securities loaned were to increase and the borrower did not increase the collateral accordingly, and the borrower fails to return the securities. Under the terms of the Program, the Fund is indemnified for such losses by BNYM. Cash collateral is held in a separate account managed by BNYM, who is authorized to exclusively enter into overnight repurchase agreements, which are collateralized at 102% with securities issued or fully guaranteed by the U.S. Treasury, U.S. Government, or any agency, instrumentality or authority of the U.S. Government. The securities purchased with cash collateral received are reflected in the Schedule of Investments. BNYM bears the risk of any deficiency in the amount of the cash collateral available for return to the borrower due to any loss on the collateral invested.

## **PORTFOLIO HOLDINGS DISCLOSURE POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

The Trust's Board has adopted a policy regarding the disclosure of information about the Fund's security holdings. The Fund's entire portfolio holdings are publicly disseminated each day the Fund is open for business through financial reporting and news services including publicly available internet web sites. In addition, the composition of the in-kind creation basket and the in-kind redemption basket, is publicly disseminated daily prior to the opening of the Exchange via the NSCC.

Greater than daily access to information concerning the Fund's portfolio holdings will be permitted (i) to certain personnel of service providers to the Fund involved in portfolio management and providing administrative, operational, risk management, or other support to portfolio management, and (ii) to other personnel of the Fund's service providers who deal directly with, or assist in, functions related to investment management, administration, custody and fund accounting, as may be necessary to conduct business in the ordinary course in a manner consistent with the Trust's exemptive relief, agreements with the Fund, and the terms of the Trust's current registration statement. From time to time, and in the ordinary course of business, such information may also be disclosed (i) to other entities that provide services to the Fund, including pricing information vendors, and third parties that deliver analytical, statistical or consulting services to the Fund and (ii) generally after it has been disseminated to the NSCC.

The Fund will disclose its complete portfolio holdings in public filings with the SEC on a quarterly basis, based on the Fund's fiscal year-end, within 60 days of the end of the quarter, and will provide that information to shareholders, as required by federal securities laws and regulations thereunder.

No person is authorized to disclose any of the Fund's portfolio holdings or other investment positions (whether in writing, by fax, by e-mail, orally, or by other means) except in accordance with this policy. The Trust's Chief Compliance Officer may authorize disclosure of portfolio holdings. The Board reviews the implementation of this policy on a periodic basis.

## **DESCRIPTION OF SHARES**

The Declaration of Trust authorizes the issuance of an unlimited number of funds and shares of the Fund. Each share of the Fund represents an equal proportionate interest in the fund with each other share. Shares of the Fund are entitled upon liquidation to a pro rata share in the net assets of the Fund. Shareholders have no preemptive rights. The Declaration of Trust provides that the Trustees of the Trust may create additional series or classes of shares. All consideration received by the Trust for shares of any additional funds and all assets in which such consideration is invested would belong to that fund and would be subject to the liabilities related thereto. Share certificates representing shares will not be issued. The Fund's shares, when issued, are fully paid and non-assessable.

Each share of the Fund has one vote with respect to matters upon which a shareholder vote is required consistent with the requirements of the 1940 Act and the rules promulgated thereunder. Shares of all funds vote together as a single class, except that if the matter being voted on affects only a particular fund it will be voted on only by that fund and if a matter affects a particular fund differently from other funds, that fund will vote separately on such matter. As a Delaware statutory trust, the Trust is not required, and does not intend, to hold annual meetings of shareholders. Approval of shareholders will be sought, however, for certain changes in the operation of the Trust and for the election of Trustees under certain circumstances.

Under the Declaration of Trust, the Trustees have the power to liquidate the Fund without shareholder approval. While the Trustees have no present intention of exercising this power, they may do so if the Fund fails to reach a viable size within a reasonable amount of time or for such other reasons as may be determined by the Board.

## **LIMITATION OF TRUSTEES' LIABILITY**

The Declaration of Trust provides that a Trustee shall be liable only for his or her own willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of the office of Trustee, and shall not be liable for errors of judgment or mistakes of fact or law. The Trustees shall not be responsible or liable in any event for any neglect or wrong-doing of any officer, agent, employee, investment adviser or principal underwriter of the Trust, nor shall any Trustee be responsible for the act or omission of any other Trustee. The Declaration of Trust also provides that the Trust shall

indemnify each person who is, or has been, a Trustee, officer, employee or agent of the Trust, any person who is serving or has served at the Trust's request as a Trustee, officer, trustee, employee or agent of another organization in which the Trust has any interest as a shareholder, creditor or otherwise to the extent and in the manner provided in the By-Laws. However, nothing in the Declaration of Trust shall protect or indemnify a Trustee against any liability for his or her willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of the office of Trustee. Nothing contained in this section attempts to disclaim a Trustee's individual liability in any manner inconsistent with the federal securities laws.

## **BROKERAGE TRANSACTIONS**

The policy of the Trust regarding purchases and sales of securities for the Fund is that primary consideration will be given to obtaining the most favorable prices and efficient executions of transactions. Consistent with this policy, when securities transactions are effected on a stock exchange, the Trust's policy is to pay commissions which are considered fair and reasonable without necessarily determining that the lowest possible commissions are paid in all circumstances. The Trust believes that a requirement always to seek the lowest possible commission cost could impede effective portfolio management and preclude the Fund and the Sub-Advisers from obtaining a high quality of brokerage and research services. In seeking to determine the reasonableness of brokerage commissions paid in any transaction, WhiteStar will rely upon its experience and knowledge regarding commissions generally charged by various brokers and on its judgment in evaluating the brokerage services received from the broker effecting the transaction. Such determinations are necessarily subjective and imprecise, as in most cases, an exact dollar value for those services is not ascertainable. The Trust has adopted policies and procedures that prohibit the consideration of sales of the Fund's shares as a factor in the selection of a broker or dealer to execute its portfolio transactions.

Each Sub-Adviser owes a fiduciary duty to its clients to seek to provide best execution on trades effected. In selecting a broker/dealer for each specific transaction, WhiteStar chooses the broker/dealer deemed most capable of providing the services necessary to obtain the most favorable execution. Best execution is generally understood to mean the most favorable cost or net proceeds reasonably obtainable under the circumstances. The full range of brokerage services applicable to a particular transaction may be considered when making this judgment, which may include, but is not limited to: liquidity, price, commission, timing, aggregated trades, capable floor brokers or traders, competent block trading coverage, ability to position, capital strength and stability, reliable and accurate communications and settlement processing, use of automation, knowledge of other buyers or sellers, arbitrage skills, administrative ability, underwriting and provision of information on a particular security or market in which the transaction is to occur. The specific criteria will vary depending upon the nature of the transaction, the market in which it is executed, and the extent to which it is possible to select from among multiple broker/dealers. WhiteStar will also use electronic crossing networks ("ECNs") when appropriate.

WhiteStar may use the Fund's assets for, or participate in, third-party soft dollar arrangements, in addition to receiving proprietary research from various full service brokers, the cost of which is bundled with the cost of the broker's execution services. WhiteStar does not "pay up" for the value of any such proprietary research. Section 28(e) of the Exchange Act permits WhiteStar, under certain circumstances, to cause the Fund to pay a broker or dealer a commission for effecting a transaction in excess of the amount of commission another broker or dealer would have charged for effecting the transaction in recognition of the value of brokerage and research services provided by the broker or dealer. WhiteStar may receive a variety of research services and information on many topics, which it can use in connection with its management responsibilities with respect to the various accounts over which it exercises investment discretion or otherwise provides investment advice. The research services may include qualifying order management systems, portfolio attribution and monitoring services and computer software and access charges which are directly related to investment research. Accordingly, the Fund may pay a broker commission higher than the lowest available in recognition of the broker's provision of such services to WhiteStar, but only if WhiteStar determines the total commission (including the soft dollar benefit) is comparable to the best commission rate that could be expected to be received from other brokers. The amount of soft dollar benefits received depends on the amount of brokerage transactions effected with the brokers. A conflict of interest exists because there is an incentive to: 1) cause clients to pay a higher commission than the firm might otherwise be able to negotiate; 2) cause clients to engage in more securities transactions than would otherwise be optimal; and 3) only recommend brokers that provide soft dollar benefits.

WhiteStar faces a potential conflict of interest when it uses client trades to obtain brokerage or research services. This conflict exists because WhiteStar is able to use the brokerage or research services to manage client accounts without paying cash for such services, which reduces WhiteStar's expenses to the extent that WhiteStar would have purchased such products had they not been provided by brokers. Section 28(e) permits WhiteStar to use brokerage or research services for the benefit of any account it manages. Certain accounts managed by WhiteStar may generate soft dollars used to purchase brokerage or research services that ultimately benefit other accounts managed by WhiteStar, effectively cross subsidizing the other accounts managed by WhiteStar that benefit directly from the product. WhiteStar may not necessarily use all of the brokerage or research services in connection with managing the Fund whose trades generated the soft dollars used to purchase such products.

WhiteStar is responsible, subject to oversight by the Adviser and the Board, for placing orders on behalf of the Fund for the purchase or sale of portfolio securities. If purchases or sales of portfolio securities of the Fund and one or more other investment companies or clients supervised by WhiteStar are considered at or about the same time, transactions in such securities are allocated among the several investment companies and clients in a manner deemed equitable and consistent with its fiduciary obligations to all by WhiteStar. In some cases, this procedure could have a detrimental effect on the price or volume of the security so far as the Fund are concerned. However, in other cases, it is possible that the ability to participate in volume transactions and to negotiate lower brokerage commissions will be beneficial to the Fund. The primary consideration is prompt execution of orders at the most favorable net price.

The Fund may deal with affiliates in principal transactions to the extent permitted by exemptive order or applicable rule or regulation.

During the fiscal years ended June 30, 2017, June 30, 2018, and June 30, 2019, the Fund and/or the Predecessor Fund paid \$314, \$0, and \$1,308, respectively, in aggregate brokerage commissions on portfolio transactions.

**Directed Brokerage.** For the fiscal year ended June 30, 2019, the Fund did not pay commissions on brokerage transactions directed to brokers pursuant to an agreement or understanding whereby the broker provides research or other brokerage services to the Adviser or Sub-Advisers.

**Brokerage with Fund Affiliates.** The Fund may execute brokerage or other agency transactions through registered broker-dealer affiliates of the Fund, the Adviser, the Sub-Advisers or the Distributor for a commission in conformity with the 1940 Act, the Exchange Act and rules promulgated by the SEC. These rules require that commissions paid to the affiliate by the Fund for exchange transactions not exceed "usual and customary" brokerage commissions. The rules define "usual and customary" commissions to include amounts which are "reasonable and fair compared to the commission, fee or other remuneration received or to be received by other brokers in connection with comparable transactions involving similar securities being purchased or sold on a securities exchange during a comparable period of time." The Trustees, including those who are not "interested persons" of the Trust, have adopted procedures for evaluating the reasonableness of commissions paid to affiliates and review these procedures periodically.

For the fiscal year ended June 30, 2019, the Fund did not pay brokerage commissions to affiliated brokers.

**Securities of "Regular Broker-Dealer."** The Fund is required to identify any securities of its "regular brokers and dealers" (as such term is defined in the 1940 Act) which it may hold at the close of its most recent fiscal year. "Regular brokers or dealers" of the Trust are the ten brokers or dealers that, during the most recent fiscal year: (i) received the greatest dollar amounts of brokerage commissions from the Trust's portfolio transactions; (ii) engaged as principal in the largest dollar amounts of portfolio transactions of the Trust; or (iii) sold the largest dollar amounts of the Trust's shares. As of June 30, 2019, the Fund did not hold securities of its "regular brokers and dealers."

## **PORTFOLIO TURNOVER RATE**

Portfolio turnover may vary from year to year, as well as within a year. High turnover rates are likely to result in comparatively greater brokerage expenses. The overall reasonableness of brokerage commissions is evaluated by the Sub-Advisers based upon their knowledge of available information as to the general level of commissions paid by other institutional investors for comparable services.

## **BOOK ENTRY ONLY SYSTEM**

Depository Trust Company (“DTC”) acts as securities depository for the Fund’s shares. Shares of the Fund are represented by securities registered in the name of DTC or its nominee, Cede & Co., and deposited with, or on behalf of, DTC. Except in limited circumstances set forth below, certificates will not be issued for shares.

DTC is a limited-purpose trust company that was created to hold securities of its participants (the “DTC’s Participants”) and to facilitate the clearance and settlement of securities transactions among the DTC Participants in such securities through electronic book-entry changes in accounts of the DTC Participants, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of securities certificates. DTC Participants include securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations, some of whom (and/or their representatives) own DTC. More specifically, DTC is owned by a number of its DTC Participants and by the NYSE and FINRA. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as banks, brokers, dealers, and trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a DTC Participant, either directly or indirectly (the “Indirect Participants”).

Beneficial ownership of shares of the Fund is limited to DTC Participants, Indirect Participants, and persons holding interests through DTC Participants and Indirect Participants. Ownership of beneficial interests in shares of the Fund (owners of such beneficial interests are referred to herein as "Beneficial Owners") is shown on, and the transfer of ownership is effected only through, records maintained by DTC (with respect to DTC Participants) and on the records of DTC Participants (with respect to Indirect Participants and Beneficial Owners that are not DTC Participants). Beneficial Owners will receive from or through the DTC Participant a written confirmation relating to their purchase of shares of the Fund. The Trust recognizes DTC or its nominee as the record owner of all shares of the Fund for all purposes. Beneficial Owners of shares of the Fund are not entitled to have such shares registered in their names, and will not receive or be entitled to physical delivery of share certificates. Each Beneficial Owner must rely on the procedures of DTC and any DTC Participant and/or Indirect Participant through which such Beneficial Owner holds its interests, to exercise any rights of a holder of shares of the Fund.

Conveyance of all notices, statements, and other communications to Beneficial Owners is effected as follows. DTC will make available to the Trust upon request and for a fee a listing of shares of the Fund held by each DTC Participant. The Trust shall obtain from each such DTC Participant the number of Beneficial Owners holding shares of the Fund, directly or indirectly, through such DTC Participant. The Trust shall provide each such DTC Participant with copies of such notice, statement, or other communication, in such form, number and at such place as such DTC Participant may reasonably request, in order that such notice, statement or communication may be transmitted by such DTC Participant, directly or indirectly, to such Beneficial Owners. In addition, the Trust shall pay to each such DTC Participant a fair and reasonable amount as reimbursement for the expenses attendant to such transmittal, all subject to applicable statutory and regulatory requirements.

Share distributions shall be made to DTC or its nominee, Cede & Co., as the registered holder of all shares of the Fund. DTC or its nominee, upon receipt of any such distributions, shall credit immediately DTC Participants' accounts with payments in amounts proportionate to their respective beneficial interests in the Fund as shown on the records of DTC or its nominee. Payments by DTC Participants to Indirect Participants and Beneficial Owners of shares of the Fund held through such DTC Participants will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is now the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in a "street name," and will be the responsibility of such DTC Participants.

The Trust has no responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or notices to Beneficial Owners, or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests in the Fund’s shares, or for maintaining, supervising, or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests, or for any other aspect of the relationship between DTC and the DTC Participants or the relationship between such DTC Participants and the Indirect Participants and Beneficial Owners owning through such DTC Participants.

DTC may determine to discontinue providing its service with respect to the Fund at any time by giving reasonable notice to the Fund and discharging its responsibilities with respect thereto under applicable law. Under such circumstances, the Fund shall take action either to find a replacement for DTC to perform its functions at a comparable cost or, if such replacement

is unavailable, to issue and deliver printed certificates representing ownership of shares of the Fund, unless the Trust makes other arrangements with respect thereto satisfactory to the Exchange.

## CONTROL PERSONS AND PRINCIPAL HOLDERS OF SECURITIES

Although the Trust does not have information concerning the beneficial ownership of shares held in the names of DTC Participants, as of October 1, 2019, the name, address and percentage ownership of each DTC Participant that owned of record, or beneficially, 5% or more of the outstanding shares of the Fund is set forth below. Shareholders having more than 25% beneficial ownership of the Fund’s outstanding shares may be in control of the Fund and be able to affect the outcome of certain matters presented for a vote of shareholders.

Participant Name and Address	Percentage of Ownership
National Financial Services, LLC 200 Seaport Boulevard Mail Zone L10C Boston, MA 02210	17.30%
TD Ameritrade Clearing, Inc. 200 South 108 <sup>th</sup> Avenue Omaha, NE 68154	12.27%
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc. 211 Main Street San Francisco, CA 94105	12.02%
Wells Fargo Clearing Services, LLC One North Jefferson Avenue MAC H0005-6D St. Louis, MO 63103	10.26%
Raymond James & Associates, Inc. 800 Carillon Parkway St. Petersburg, FL 33716	5.86%
Pershing, LLC One Pershing Plaza Jersey City, NJ 07399	5.55%

## PURCHASE AND REDEMPTION OF SHARES IN CREATION UNITS

The Fund issues and redeems its shares on a continuous basis, at NAV, only in a large specified number of shares called a “Creation Unit,” either principally in-kind for securities closely approximating the holdings of the Fund or in cash for the value of such securities. The NAV of the Fund’s shares is determined once each Business Day (defined below), as described below under “Determination of Net Asset Value.” The Creation Unit size may change. Authorized Participants will be notified of such change.

**PURCHASE (CREATION).** The Trust issues and sells shares of the Fund only: (i) in Creation Units on a continuous basis through the Distributor, without a sales load (but subject to transaction fees), at their NAV per share next determined after receipt of an order, on any Business Day, in proper form pursuant to the terms of the Authorized Participant Agreement (“Participant Agreement”); or (ii) pursuant to the Dividend Reinvestment Service (defined below). The Fund will not issue fractional Creation Units. A Business Day is, generally, any day on which the Exchange is open for business.

**FUND DEPOSIT.** The consideration for purchase of a Creation Unit of the Fund generally consists of either (i) the in-kind deposit of a designated portfolio of securities (the “Deposit Securities”) per each Creation Unit, constituting a substantial replication, or a portfolio sampling representation, of the Fund’s holdings and the Cash Component (defined below), computed as described below, or (ii) the cash value of the Deposit Securities (“Deposit Cash”) and the Cash Component.

When accepting purchases of Creation Units for cash, the Fund may incur additional costs associated with the acquisition of Deposit Securities that would otherwise be provided by an in-kind purchaser. These additional costs may be recoverable from the purchaser of Creation Units.

Together, the Deposit Securities or Deposit Cash, as applicable, and the Cash Component constitute the “Fund Deposit,” which represents the minimum initial and subsequent investment amount for a Creation Unit of the Fund. The “Cash Component” is an amount equal to the difference between the NAV of the shares of the Fund (per Creation Unit) and the market value of the Deposit Securities or Deposit Cash, as applicable. If the Cash Component is a positive number (*i.e.*, the NAV per Creation Unit exceeds the market value of the Deposit Securities or Deposit Cash, as applicable), the Cash Component shall be such positive amount. If the Cash Component is a negative number (*i.e.*, the NAV per Creation Unit is less than the market value of the Deposit Securities or Deposit Cash, as applicable), the Cash Component shall be such negative amount and the creator will be entitled to receive cash in an amount equal to the Cash Component. The Cash Component serves the function of compensating for any differences between the NAV per Creation Unit and the market value of the Deposit Securities or Deposit Cash, as applicable. Computation of the Cash Component excludes any stamp duty or other similar fees and expenses payable upon transfer of beneficial ownership of the Deposit Securities, if applicable, which shall be the sole responsibility of the Authorized Participant (as defined below).

The Fund, through NSCC, makes available on each Business Day, prior to the opening of business on the Exchange (currently 9:30 a.m., Eastern time), the list of the names and the required number of shares of each Deposit Security or the required amount of Deposit Cash, as applicable, to be included in the current Fund Deposit (based on information at the end of the previous Business Day) for the Fund. The Fund Deposit is subject to any applicable adjustments as described below, in order to effect purchases of Creation Units of the Fund until such time as the next-announced composition of the Deposit Securities or the required amount of Deposit Cash, as applicable, is made available.

The identity and number of shares of the Deposit Securities or the amount of Deposit Cash, as applicable, required for the Fund Deposit for the Fund changes as rebalancing adjustments and corporate action events are reflected from time to time by the Adviser with a view to the investment objective of the Fund.

The Trust reserves the right to permit or require the substitution of Deposit Cash to replace any Deposit Security, which shall be added to the Cash Component, including, without limitation, in situations where the Deposit Security: (i) may not be available in sufficient quantity for delivery; (ii) may not be eligible for transfer through the systems of DTC for corporate securities and municipal securities or the Federal Reserve System for U.S. Treasury securities; (iii) may not be eligible for trading by an Authorized Participant (as defined below) or the investor for which it is acting; (iv) would be restricted under the securities laws or where the delivery of the Deposit Security to the Authorized Participant would result in the disposition of the Deposit Security by the Authorized Participant becoming restricted under the securities laws; or (v) in certain other situations (collectively, “custom orders”). The Trust also reserves the right to permit or require the substitution of Deposit Securities in lieu of Deposit Cash.

**CASH PURCHASE METHOD.** The Trust may at its discretion permit full or partial cash purchases of Creation Units of the Fund. When full or partial cash purchases of Creation Units are available or specified for the Fund, they will be effected in essentially the same manner as in-kind purchases thereof. In the case of a full or partial cash purchase, the Authorized Participant must pay the cash equivalent of the Deposit Securities it would otherwise be required to provide through an in-kind purchase, plus the same Cash Component required to be paid by an in-kind purchaser together with a creation transaction fee and non-standard charges, as may be applicable.

**PROCEDURES FOR PURCHASE OF CREATION UNITS.** To be eligible to place orders with the Distributor to purchase a Creation Unit of the Fund, an entity must be (i) a “Participating Party”, *i.e.*, a broker-dealer or other participant in the clearing process through the Continuous Net Settlement System of the NSCC (the “Clearing Process”), a clearing agency that is registered with the SEC; or (ii) a DTC Participant (see “BOOK ENTRY ONLY SYSTEM”). In addition, each Participating Party or DTC Participant (each, an “Authorized Participant”) must execute a Participant Agreement that has been agreed to by the Distributor, and that has been accepted by the Transfer Agent and the Trust, with respect to purchases and redemptions of Creation Units. Each Authorized Participant will agree, pursuant to the terms of a Participant Agreement, on behalf of itself or any investor on whose behalf it will act, to certain conditions, including that it will pay to the Trust, an amount of cash sufficient to pay the Cash Component together with the creation transaction fee (defined below) and any

other applicable fees, taxes, and additional variable charge. The Adviser may retain all or a portion of the creation transaction fee to the extent the Adviser bears the expenses that otherwise would be borne by the Trust in connection with the purchase of a Creation Unit, which the creation transaction fee is designed to cover.

All orders to purchase shares of the Fund directly from the Fund, including custom orders, must be placed for one or more Creation Units in the manner and by the time set forth in the Participant Agreement and/or applicable order form. The date on which an order to purchase Creation Units (or an order to redeem Creation Units, as set forth below) is received and accepted is referred to as the “Order Placement Date.”

An Authorized Participant may require an investor to make certain representations or enter into agreements with respect to the order, (*e.g.*, to provide for payments of cash, when required). Investors should be aware that their particular broker may not have executed a Participant Agreement and that, therefore, orders to purchase shares directly from the Fund in Creation Units have to be placed by the investor’s broker through an Authorized Participant that has executed a Participant Agreement. In such cases there may be additional charges to such investor. At any given time, there may be only a limited number of broker-dealers that have executed a Participant Agreement and only a small number of such Authorized Participants may have international capabilities.

On days when the Exchange closes earlier than normal, the Fund may require orders to create Creation Units to be placed earlier in the day. In addition, if a market or markets on which the Fund’s investments are primarily traded is closed, the Fund will also generally not accept orders on such day(s). Orders must be transmitted by an Authorized Participant by telephone or other transmission method acceptable to the Distributor pursuant to procedures set forth in the Participant Agreement and in accordance with the AP Handbook or applicable order form. The Distributor will notify the Custodian of such order. The Custodian will then provide such information to the appropriate local sub-custodian(s). Those placing orders through an Authorized Participant should allow sufficient time to permit proper submission of the purchase order to the Distributor by the applicable cut-off time on such Business Day. Economic or market disruptions or changes, or telephone or other communication failure may impede the ability to reach the Distributor or an Authorized Participant.

Fund Deposits must be delivered by an Authorized Participant through the Federal Reserve System (for cash and U.S. government securities) or through DTC (for corporate securities), through a subcustody agent (for foreign securities) and/or through such other arrangements allowed by the Trust or its agents. With respect to foreign Deposit Securities, the Custodian shall cause the subcustodian of the Fund to maintain an account into which the Authorized Participant shall deliver, on behalf of itself or the party on whose behalf it is acting, such Deposit Securities (or Deposit Cash for all or a part of such securities, as permitted or required), with any appropriate adjustments as advised by the Trust. Foreign Deposit Securities must be delivered to an account maintained at the applicable local subcustodian. The Fund Deposit transfer must be ordered by the Authorized Participant in a timely fashion so as to ensure the delivery of the requisite number of Deposit Securities or Deposit Cash, as applicable, to the account of the Fund or its agents by no later than the Settlement Date. The “Settlement Date” for the Fund is generally the second Business Day after the Order Placement Date. All questions as to the number of Deposit Securities or Deposit Cash to be delivered, as applicable, and the validity, form and eligibility (including time of receipt) for the deposit of any tendered securities or cash, as applicable, will be determined by the Trust, whose determination shall be final and binding. The amount of cash represented by the Cash Component must be transferred directly to the Custodian through the Federal Reserve Bank wire transfer system in a timely manner so as to be received by the Custodian no later than the Settlement Date. If the Cash Component and the Deposit Securities or Deposit Cash, as applicable, are not received by the Custodian in a timely manner by the Settlement Date, the creation order may be cancelled and the Authorized Participant shall be liable to the Fund for losses, if any, resulting therefrom. Upon written notice to the Distributor, such canceled order may be resubmitted the following Business Day using the Fund Deposit as newly constituted to reflect the then current NAV of the Fund.

The order shall be deemed to be received on the Business Day on which the order is placed provided that the order is placed in proper form prior to the applicable cut-off time and the federal funds in the appropriate amount are deposited by 2:00 p.m. Eastern time, with the Custodian on the Settlement Date. If the order is not placed in proper form as required, or federal funds in the appropriate amount are not received by 2:00 p.m. Eastern time on the Settlement Date, then the order may be deemed to be rejected and the Authorized Participant shall be liable to the Fund for losses, if any, resulting therefrom. A creation request is considered to be in “proper form” if all procedures set forth in the Participant Agreement, AP Handbook, order form, and this SAI are properly followed.

**ISSUANCE OF A CREATION UNIT.** Except as provided herein, Creation Units will not be issued until the transfer of good title to the Trust of the Deposit Securities or payment of Deposit Cash, as applicable, and the payment of the Cash Component have been completed. When the subcustodian has confirmed to the Custodian that the required Deposit Securities (or the cash value thereof) have been delivered to the account of the relevant subcustodian or subcustodians, the Adviser shall be notified of such delivery, and the Trust will issue and cause the delivery of the Creation Units. The delivery of Creation Units so created generally will occur no later than the second Business Day following the day on which the purchase order is deemed received by the Distributor. However, the Fund reserves the right to settle Creation Unit transactions on a basis other than the second Business Day following the day on which the purchase order is deemed received by the Distributor in order to accommodate foreign market holiday schedules, to account for different treatment among foreign and U.S. markets of dividend record dates and ex-dividend dates (that is the last day the holder of a security can sell the security and still receive dividends payable on the security), and in certain other circumstances. The Authorized Participant shall be liable to the Fund for losses, if any, resulting from unsettled orders.

Creation Units may be purchased in advance of receipt by the Trust of all or a portion of the applicable Deposit Securities as described below. In these circumstances, the initial deposit will have a value greater than the NAV of the shares of the Fund on the date the order is placed in proper form since in addition to available Deposit Securities, cash must be deposited in an amount equal to the sum of (i) the Cash Component, plus (ii) an additional amount of cash equal to a percentage of the market value as set forth in the Participant Agreement, of the undelivered Deposit Securities (the “Additional Cash Deposit”), which shall be maintained in a separate non-interest bearing collateral account. The Authorized Participant must deposit with the Custodian the Additional Cash Deposit, as applicable, by the time set forth in the Participant Agreement on the Settlement Date. If the Fund or its agents do not receive the Additional Cash Deposit in the appropriate amount, by such time, then the order may be deemed rejected and the Authorized Participant shall be liable to the Fund for losses, if any, resulting therefrom. An additional amount of cash shall be required to be deposited with the Trust, pending delivery of the missing Deposit Securities to the extent necessary to maintain the Additional Cash Deposit with the Trust in an amount at least equal to the applicable percentage, as set forth in the Participant Agreement, of the daily marked to market value of the missing Deposit Securities. The Trust may use such Additional Cash Deposit to buy the missing Deposit Securities at any time. Authorized Participants will be liable to the Trust for all costs, expenses, dividends, income, and taxes associated with missing Deposit Securities, including the costs incurred by the Trust in connection with any such purchases. These costs will be deemed to include the amount by which the actual purchase price of the Deposit Securities exceeds the value of such Deposit Securities on the day the purchase order was deemed received by the Distributor plus the brokerage and related transaction costs associated with such purchases. The Trust will return any unused portion of the Additional Cash Deposit once all of the missing Deposit Securities have been properly received by the Custodian or purchased by the Trust and deposited into the Trust. In addition, a creation transaction fee as set forth below under “Creation Transaction Fee” may be charged and an additional variable charge may also apply. The delivery of Creation Units so created generally will occur no later than the Settlement Date.

**ACCEPTANCE OF ORDERS OF CREATION UNITS.** The Trust reserves the absolute right to reject an order for Creation Units transmitted to it by the Distributor in respect of the Fund including, without limitation, if (a) the order is not in proper form; (b) the Deposit Securities or Deposit Cash, as applicable, delivered by the Participant are not as disseminated through the facilities of the NSCC for that date by the Custodian; (c) the investor(s), upon obtaining the shares ordered, would own 80% or more of the currently outstanding shares of the Fund; (d) acceptance of the Deposit Securities would have certain adverse tax consequences to the Fund; (e) the acceptance of the Fund Deposit would, in the opinion of counsel, be unlawful; (f) the acceptance of the Fund Deposit would otherwise, in the discretion of the Trust or the Adviser, have an adverse effect on the Trust or the rights of beneficial owners; (g) the acceptance or receipt of the order for a Creation Unit would, in the opinion of counsel to the Trust, be unlawful; or (h) circumstances outside the control of the Trust, the Custodian, the Transfer Agent and/or the Adviser make it for all practical purposes not feasible to process orders for Creation Units.

Examples of such circumstances include acts of God or public service or utility problems such as fires, floods, extreme weather conditions and power outages resulting in telephone, telecopy and computer failures; market conditions or activities causing trading halts; systems failures involving computer or other information systems affecting the Trust, the Distributor, the Custodian, a sub-custodian, the Transfer Agent, DTC, NSCC, Federal Reserve System, or any other participant in the creation process, and other extraordinary events. The Distributor shall notify a prospective creator of a Creation Unit and/or the Authorized Participant acting on behalf of the creator of a Creation Unit of its rejection of the order of such person. The

Trust, the Transfer Agent, the Custodian, any sub-custodian and the Distributor are under no duty, however, to give notification of any defects or irregularities in the delivery of Fund Deposits nor shall either of them incur any liability for the failure to give any such notification. The Trust, the Transfer Agent, the Custodian and the Distributor shall not be liable for the rejection of any purchase order for Creation Units.

All questions as to the number of shares of each security in the Deposit Securities and the validity, form, eligibility and acceptance for deposit of any securities to be delivered shall be determined by the Trust, and the Trust's determination shall be final and binding.

**CREATION TRANSACTION FEE.** A fixed purchase (*i.e.*, creation) transaction fee may be imposed for the transfer and other transaction costs associated with the purchase of Creation Units ("Creation Order Costs"). The standard creation transaction fee for the Fund is \$500, regardless of the number of Creation Units created in the transaction. The Fund may adjust the creation transaction fee from time to time. The creation transaction fee may be waived on certain orders if the Custodian has determined to waive some or all of the Creation Order Costs associated with the order or another party, such as the Adviser, has agreed to pay such fee.

In addition, a variable fee may be imposed for cash purchases, non-standard orders, or partial cash purchases of Creation Units. The variable fee is primarily designed to cover non-standard charges, *e.g.*, brokerage, taxes, foreign exchange, execution, market impact, and other costs and expenses, related to the execution of trades resulting from such transaction. In all cases, such fees will be limited in accordance with the requirements of the SEC applicable to management investment companies offering redeemable securities. The Fund may determine not to charge a variable fee on certain orders when the Adviser has determined that doing so is in the best interests of Fund shareholders, *e.g.*, for creation orders that facilitate the rebalance of the Fund's portfolio in a more efficient manner than could have been achieved without such order.

Investors who use the services of an Authorized Participant, broker or other such intermediary may be charged a fee for such services which may include an amount for the creation transaction fee and non-standard charges. Investors are responsible for the costs of transferring the securities constituting the Deposit Securities to the account of the Trust. The Adviser may retain all or a portion of the Transaction Fee to the extent the Adviser bears the expenses that otherwise would be borne by the Trust in connection with the issuance of a Creation Unit, which the Transaction Fee is designed to cover.

**RISKS OF PURCHASING CREATION UNITS.** There are certain legal risks unique to investors purchasing Creation Units directly from the Fund. Because the Fund's shares may be issued on an ongoing basis, a "distribution" of shares could be occurring at any time. Certain activities that a shareholder performs as a dealer could, depending on the circumstances, result in the shareholder being deemed a participant in the distribution in a manner that could render the shareholder a statutory underwriter and subject to the prospectus delivery and liability provisions of the Securities Act of 1933. For example, a shareholder could be deemed a statutory underwriter if it purchases Creation Units from the Fund, breaks them down into the constituent shares, and sells those shares directly to customers, or if a shareholder chooses to couple the creation of a supply of new shares with an active selling effort involving solicitation of secondary-market demand for shares. Whether a person is an underwriter depends upon all of the facts and circumstances pertaining to that person's activities, and the examples mentioned here should not be considered a complete description of all the activities that could cause you to be deemed an underwriter.

Dealers who are not "underwriters" but are participating in a distribution (as opposed to engaging in ordinary secondary-market transactions), and thus dealing with the Fund's shares as part of an "unsold allotment" within the meaning of Section 4(a)(3)(C) of the Securities Act, will be unable to take advantage of the prospectus delivery exemption provided by Section 4(a)(3) of the Securities Act.

**REDEMPTION.** Shares of the Fund may be redeemed only in Creation Units at their NAV next determined after receipt of a redemption request in proper form by the Fund through the Transfer Agent and only on a Business Day. **EXCEPT UPON LIQUIDATION OF THE FUND, THE TRUST WILL NOT REDEEM SHARES IN AMOUNTS LESS THAN CREATION UNITS.** Investors must accumulate enough shares of the Fund in the secondary market to constitute a Creation Unit in order to have such shares redeemed by the Trust. There can be no assurance, however, that there will be sufficient liquidity in the public trading market at any time to permit assembly of a Creation Unit. Investors should expect to incur

brokerage and other costs in connection with assembling a sufficient number of shares to constitute a redeemable Creation Unit.

With respect to the Fund, the Custodian, through the NSCC, makes available prior to the opening of business on the Exchange (currently 9:30 a.m. Eastern time) on each Business Day, the list of the names and share quantities of the Fund's portfolio securities that will be applicable (subject to possible amendment or correction) to redemption requests received in proper form (as defined below) on that day ("Fund Securities"). Fund Securities received on redemption may not be identical to Deposit Securities.

Redemption proceeds for a Creation Unit are paid either in-kind or in cash, or combination thereof, as determined by the Trust. With respect to in-kind redemptions of the Fund, redemption proceeds for a Creation Unit will consist of Fund Securities, as announced by the Custodian on the Business Day of the request for redemption received in proper form, plus cash in an amount equal to the difference between the NAV of the shares of the Fund being redeemed, as next determined after a receipt of a request in proper form, and the value of the Fund Securities (the "Cash Redemption Amount"), less any fixed redemption transaction fee as set forth below and any applicable additional variable charge as set forth below. In the event that the Fund Securities have a value greater than the NAV of the shares of the Fund, a compensating cash payment equal to the differential is required to be made by or through an Authorized Participant by the redeeming shareholder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, at the Trust's discretion, an Authorized Participant may receive the corresponding cash value of the securities in lieu of the in-kind securities value representing one or more Fund Securities.

**CASH REDEMPTION METHOD.** Although the Trust does not ordinarily permit full or partial cash redemptions of Creation Units of the Fund, when full or partial cash redemptions of Creation Units are available or specified for the Fund, they will be effected in essentially the same manner as in-kind redemptions thereof. In the case of full or partial cash redemptions, the Authorized Participant receives the cash equivalent of the Fund Securities it would otherwise receive through an in-kind redemption, plus the same Cash Redemption Amount to be paid to an in-kind redeemer.

**REDEMPTION TRANSACTION FEE.** A fixed redemption transaction fee may be imposed for the transfer and other transaction costs associated with the redemption of Creation Units ("Redemption Order Costs"). The standard redemption transaction fee for the Fund is \$500 regardless of the number of Creation Units redeemed in the transaction. The Fund may adjust the redemption transaction fee from time to time. The redemption transaction fee may be waived on certain orders if the Custodian has determined to waive some or all of the Redemption Order Costs associated with the order or another party, such as the Adviser, has agreed to pay such fee.

In addition, a variable fee, payable to the Fund, may be imposed for cash redemptions, non-standard orders, or partial cash redemptions for the Fund. The variable fee is primarily designed to cover non-standard charges, *e.g.*, brokerage, taxes, foreign exchange, execution, market impact, and other costs and expenses, related to the execution of trades resulting from such transaction. In all cases, such fees will be limited in accordance with the requirements of the SEC applicable to management investment companies offering redeemable securities. The Fund may determine not to charge a variable fee on certain orders when the Adviser has determined that doing so is in the best interests of Fund shareholders, *e.g.*, for redemption orders that facilitate the rebalance of the Fund's portfolio in a more tax efficient manner than could be achieved without such order.

Investors who use the services of an Authorized Participant, broker or other such intermediary may be charged a fee for such services, which may include an amount for the redemption transaction fees and non-standard charges. Investors are responsible for the costs of transferring the securities constituting the Fund Securities to the account of the Trust. The non-standard charges are payable to the Fund as it incurs costs in connection with the redemption of Creation Units, the receipt of Fund Securities and the Cash Redemption Amount and other transactions costs. The Adviser may retain all or a portion of the redemption transaction fee to the extent the Adviser bears the expenses that otherwise would be borne by the Trust in connection with the redemption of a Creation Unit, which the redemption transaction fee is designed to cover.

**PROCEDURES FOR REDEMPTION OF CREATION UNITS.** Orders to redeem Creation Units must be submitted in proper form to the Transfer Agent prior to the time as set forth in the Participant Agreement. A redemption request is considered to be in "proper form" if (i) an Authorized Participant has transferred or caused to be transferred to the Trust's Transfer Agent the Creation Unit(s) being redeemed through the book-entry system of DTC so as to be effective by the time

as set forth in the Participant Agreement and (ii) a request in form satisfactory to the Trust is received by the Transfer Agent from the Authorized Participant on behalf of itself or another redeeming investor within the time periods specified in the Participant Agreement. If the Transfer Agent does not receive the investor's shares of the Fund through DTC's facilities by the times and pursuant to the other terms and conditions set forth in the Participant Agreement, the redemption request shall be rejected, unless, to the extent contemplated by the Participant Agreement, collateral is posted in an amount equal to a percentage of the value of the missing shares of the Fund as specified in the Participant Agreement (and marked to market daily).

The Authorized Participant must transmit the request for redemption, in the form required by the Trust, to the Transfer Agent in accordance with procedures set forth in the Participant Agreement. Investors should be aware that their particular broker may not have executed a Participant Agreement, and that, therefore, requests to redeem Creation Units may have to be placed by the investor's broker through an Authorized Participant who has executed a Participant Agreement. Investors making a redemption request should be aware that such request must be in the form specified by such Authorized Participant. Investors making a request to redeem Creation Units should allow sufficient time to permit proper submission of the request by an Authorized Participant and transfer of the shares of the Fund to the Trust's Transfer Agent; such investors should allow for the additional time that may be required to effect redemptions through their banks, brokers or other financial intermediaries if such intermediaries are not Authorized Participants.

**ADDITIONAL REDEMPTION PROCEDURES.** In connection with taking delivery of shares of Fund Securities upon redemption of Creation Units, a redeeming shareholder or Authorized Participant acting on behalf of such shareholder must maintain appropriate custody arrangements with a qualified broker-dealer, bank or other custody providers in each jurisdiction in which any of the Fund Securities are customarily traded, to which account such Fund Securities will be delivered. Deliveries of redemption proceeds generally will be made within two Business Days of the trade date. However, due to the schedule of holidays in certain countries, the different treatment among foreign and U.S. markets of dividend record dates and dividend ex-dates (that is the last date the holder of a security can sell the security and still receive dividends payable on the security sold), and in certain other circumstances, the delivery of in-kind redemption proceeds may take longer than two Business Days after the day on which the redemption request is received in proper form. If neither the redeeming shareholder nor the Authorized Participant acting on behalf of such redeeming shareholder has appropriate arrangements to take delivery of the Fund Securities in the applicable foreign jurisdiction and it is not possible to make other such arrangements, or if it is not possible to effect deliveries of the Fund Securities in such jurisdiction, the Trust may, in its discretion, exercise its option to redeem such shares in cash, and the redeeming shareholders will be required to receive redemption proceeds in cash.

If it is not possible to make other such arrangements, or it is not possible to effect deliveries of the Fund Securities, the Trust may in its discretion exercise its option to redeem such shares in cash, and the redeeming investor will be required to receive its redemption proceeds in cash. In addition, an investor may request a redemption in cash that the Fund may, in its sole discretion, permit. In either case, the investor will receive a cash payment equal to the NAV of its shares based on the NAV of shares of the Fund next determined after the redemption request is received in proper form (minus a redemption transaction fee and additional charge for requested cash redemptions specified above, to offset the Trust's brokerage and other transaction costs associated with the disposition of Fund Securities). The Fund may also, in its sole discretion, upon request of a shareholder, provide such redeemer a portfolio of securities that differs from the exact composition of the Fund Securities but does not differ in NAV.

Pursuant to the Participant Agreement, an Authorized Participant submitting a redemption request is deemed to make certain representations to the Trust regarding the Authorized Participant's ability to tender for redemption the requisite number of shares of the Fund. The Trust reserves the right to verify these representations at its discretion, but will typically require verification with respect to a redemption request from the Fund in connection with higher levels of redemption activity and/or short interest in the fund. If the Authorized Participant, upon receipt of a verification request, does not provide sufficient verification of its representations as determined by the Trust, the redemption request will not be considered to have been received in proper form and may be rejected by the Trust.

Redemptions of shares for Fund Securities will be subject to compliance with applicable federal and state securities laws and the Fund (whether or not it otherwise permits cash redemptions) reserves the right to redeem Creation Units for cash to the extent that the Trust could not lawfully deliver specific Fund Securities upon redemptions or could not do so without

first registering the Fund Securities under such laws. An Authorized Participant or an investor for which it is acting subject to a legal restriction with respect to a particular security included in the Fund Securities applicable to the redemption of Creation Units may be paid an equivalent amount of cash. The Authorized Participant may request the redeeming investor of the shares of the Fund to complete an order form or to enter into agreements with respect to such matters as compensating cash payment. Further, an Authorized Participant that is not a “qualified institutional buyer,” (“QIB”) as such term is defined under Rule 144A of the Securities Act, will not be able to receive Fund Securities that are restricted securities eligible for resale under Rule 144A. An Authorized Participant may be required by the Trust to provide a written confirmation with respect to QIB status in order to receive Fund Securities.

Because the portfolio securities of the Fund may trade on the relevant exchange(s) on days that the Exchange is closed or are otherwise not Business Days for the Fund, shareholders may not be able to redeem their shares, or to purchase or sell shares on the Exchange, on days when the NAV of the Fund could be significantly affected by events in the relevant foreign markets.

The right of redemption may be suspended or the date of payment postponed with respect to the Fund (1) for any period during which the New York Stock Exchange is closed (other than customary weekend and holiday closings); (2) for any period during which trading on the New York Stock Exchange is suspended or restricted; (3) for any period during which an emergency exists as a result of which disposal of the securities owned by the Fund or determination of the NAV of the shares of the Fund is not reasonably practicable; or (4) in such other circumstance as is permitted by the SEC.

## **DETERMINATION OF NET ASSET VALUE**

NAV per share for the Fund is computed by dividing the value of the net assets of the Fund (*i.e.*, the value of its total assets less total liabilities) by the total number of shares outstanding, rounded to the nearest cent. Expenses and fees, including the management fees, are accrued daily and taken into account for purposes of determining NAV. The NAV of the Fund is calculated by UMBFS and determined at the close of the regular trading session on the Exchange (ordinarily 4:00 p.m. Eastern time) on each day that such exchange is open, provided that fixed-income assets may be valued as of the announced closing time for trading in fixed-income instruments on any day that the Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association (“SIFMA”) announces an early closing time.

In calculating the Fund’s NAV per share, the Fund’s investments are generally valued using market valuations. A market valuation generally means a valuation (i) obtained from an exchange, a pricing service, or a major market maker (or dealer), (ii) based on a price quotation or other equivalent indication of value supplied by an exchange, a pricing service, or a major market maker (or dealer) or (iii) based on amortized cost. In the case of shares of other funds that are not traded on an exchange, a market valuation means such fund’s published NAV per share. The Sub-Advisers may use various pricing services, or discontinue the use of any pricing service, as approved by the Board from time to time. A price obtained from a pricing service based on such pricing service’s valuation matrix may be considered a market valuation. Any assets or liabilities denominated in currencies other than the U.S. dollar are converted into U.S. dollars at the current market rates on the date of valuation as quoted by one or more sources.

In the event that current market valuations are not readily available or such valuations do not reflect current market value, the Trust’s procedures require the Valuation Committee to determine a security’s fair value if a market price is not readily available. In determining such value, the Valuation Committee may consider, among other things, (i) price comparisons among multiple sources, (ii) a review of corporate actions and news events, and (iii) a review of relevant financial indicators (*e.g.*, movement in interest rates and market indices). In these cases, the Fund’s NAV may reflect certain portfolio securities’ fair values rather than their market prices. Fair value pricing involves subjective judgments and it is possible that the fair value determination for a security is materially different than the value that could be realized upon the sale of the security. With respect to securities that are primarily listed on foreign exchanges, the value of the Fund’s portfolio securities may change on days when you will not be able to purchase or sell your shares.

## **DIVIDENDS AND DISTRIBUTIONS**

The following information supplements and should be read in conjunction with the section in the Prospectus entitled “Dividends, Distributions and Taxes.”

General Policies. Dividends from net investment income, if any, are generally declared and paid monthly by the Fund. Distributions of remaining net realized capital gains, if any, generally are declared and paid once a year, but the Fund may make distributions on a more frequent basis for the Fund to comply with the distribution requirements of the Internal Revenue Code, in all events in a manner consistent with the provisions of the 1940 Act.

Dividends and other distributions on shares of the Fund are distributed, as described below, on a pro rata basis to Beneficial Owners of such shares. Dividend payments are made through DTC Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners then of record with proceeds received from the Trust.

The Fund will make additional distributions to the extent necessary (i) to distribute the entire annual taxable income of the Fund, plus any net capital gains and (ii) to avoid imposition of the excise tax imposed by Section 4982 of the Internal Revenue Code. Management of the Trust reserves the right to declare special dividends if, in its reasonable discretion, such action is necessary or advisable to preserve the Fund's eligibility for treatment as a RIC or to avoid imposition of income or excise taxes on undistributed income.

Dividend Reinvestment Service. The Trust will not make the DTC book-entry dividend reinvestment service available for use by Beneficial Owners for reinvestment of their cash proceeds, but certain individual broker-dealers may make available the DTC book-entry Dividend Reinvestment Service for use by Beneficial Owners of the Fund through DTC Participants for reinvestment of their dividend distributions. Investors should contact their brokers to ascertain the availability and description of these services. Beneficial Owners should be aware that each broker may require investors to adhere to specific procedures and timetables in order to participate in the dividend reinvestment service and investors should ascertain from their brokers such necessary details. If this service is available and used, dividend distributions of both income and realized gains will be automatically reinvested in additional whole shares issued by the Trust of the same Fund at NAV per share. Distributions reinvested in additional shares of the Fund will nevertheless be taxable to Beneficial Owners acquiring such additional shares to the same extent as if such distributions had been received in cash.

## **FEDERAL INCOME TAXES**

The following is a summary of certain additional U.S. federal income tax considerations generally affecting the Fund and its shareholders that supplements the summary in the Prospectus. No attempt is made to present a comprehensive explanation of the federal, state, local or foreign tax treatment of the Fund or its shareholders, and the discussion here and in the Prospectus is not intended to be a substitute for careful tax planning. The summary is very general, and does not address investors subject to special rules, such as investors who hold shares through an individual retirement account ("IRA"), 401(k) or other tax-advantaged account.

The following general discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax consequences is based on provisions of the Internal Revenue Code and the regulations issued thereunder as in effect on the date of this SAI. New legislation, as well as administrative changes or court decisions, may significantly change the conclusions expressed herein, and may have a retroactive effect with respect to the transactions contemplated herein.

The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act") made significant changes to the U.S. federal income tax rules for taxation of individuals and corporations, generally effective for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2017. Many of the changes applicable to individuals are temporary and only apply to taxable years beginning after December 31, 2017 and before January 1, 2026. There are only minor changes with respect to the specific rules applicable to a RIC, such as the Fund. The Tax Act, however, made numerous other changes to the tax rules that may affect shareholders and the Fund. You are urged to consult with your own tax advisor regarding how the Tax Act affects your investment in the Fund.

Shareholders are urged to consult their own tax advisers regarding the application of the provisions of tax law described in this SAI in light of the particular tax situations of the shareholders and regarding specific questions as to federal, state, or local taxes.

## **Regulated Investment Company Status**

The Fund will seek to qualify and elect to be treated as a RIC under the Internal Revenue Code. By following such a policy, the Fund expects to eliminate or reduce to a nominal amount the federal taxes to which it may be subject. If the Fund qualifies as a RIC, it will generally not be subject to federal income taxes on the net investment income and net realized capital gains that it timely distributes to its shareholders. The Board reserves the right not to maintain the qualification of the Fund as a RIC if it determines such course of action to be beneficial to shareholders.

In order to qualify as a RIC under the Internal Revenue Code, the Fund must distribute annually to its shareholders at least an amount equal to the sum of 90% of the Fund's net investment company taxable income for such year (including, for this purpose, dividends, taxable interest, and the excess of net short-term capital gains over net long-term capital losses, less operating expenses), computed without regard to the dividends-paid deduction, and at least 90% of its net tax-exempt interest income for such year, if any (the "Distribution Requirement") and also must meet certain additional requirements. One of these additional requirements for RIC qualification is that the Fund must receive at least 90% of its gross income each taxable year from dividends, interest, payments with respect to certain securities loans, gains from the sale or other disposition of stock, securities or foreign currencies, or other income (including but not limited to gains from options, futures or forward contracts) derived with respect to the Fund's business of investing in stock, securities, foreign currencies and net income from interests in qualified publicly traded partnerships (the "90% Test"). A second requirement for qualification as a RIC is that the Fund must diversify its holdings so that, at the end of each quarter of the Fund's taxable year: (a) at least 50% of the market value of the Fund's total assets is represented by cash and cash items, U.S. government securities, securities of other RICs, and other securities, with these other securities limited, in respect to any one issuer, to an amount not greater than 5% of the value of the Fund's total assets or 10% of the outstanding voting securities of such issuer, including the equity securities of a qualified publicly traded partnership; and (b) not more than 25% of the value of its total assets is invested, including through corporations in which the Fund owns a 20% or more voting stock interest, in the securities (other than U.S. government securities or securities of other RICs) of any one issuer or the securities (other than the securities of another RIC) of two or more issuers that the Fund controls and which are engaged in the same or similar trades or businesses or related trades or businesses, or the securities of one or more qualified publicly traded partnerships (the "Asset Test").

If the Fund fails to satisfy the 90% Test or the Asset Test, the Fund may be eligible for relief provisions if the failures are due to reasonable cause and not willful neglect and if a penalty tax is paid with respect to each failure to satisfy the applicable requirements. Additionally, relief is provided for certain *de minimis* failures of the Asset Test where the Fund corrects the failure within a specified period of time. In order to be eligible for the relief provisions with respect to a failure to meet the Asset Test, the Fund may be required to dispose of certain assets. If these relief provisions are not available to the Fund and it fails to qualify for treatment as a RIC for a taxable year, all of its taxable income would be subject to tax at the regular corporate income tax rate (currently 21%) without any deduction for distributions to shareholders, and its distributions (including capital gains distributions) generally would be taxable as ordinary income dividends to its shareholders, subject to the dividends-received deduction for corporate shareholders and the lower tax rates on qualified dividend income received by non-corporate shareholders. In addition, the Fund could be required to recognize unrealized gains, pay substantial taxes and interest, and make substantial distributions before requalifying as a RIC. If the Fund determines that it will not qualify for treatment as a RIC, the Fund will establish procedures to reflect the anticipated tax liability in the Fund's NAV.

Although the Fund intends to distribute substantially all of its net investment income and may distribute its capital gains for any taxable year, the Fund will be subject to federal income taxation to the extent any such income or gains are not distributed.

The Fund may designate certain amounts retained as undistributed net capital gain in a notice to its shareholders, who (i) will be required to include in income for U.S. federal income tax purposes, as long-term capital gain, their proportionate shares of the undistributed amount so designated, (ii) will be entitled to credit their proportionate shares of the income tax paid by the Fund on that undistributed amount against their federal income tax liabilities and to claim refunds to the extent such credits exceed their liabilities and (iii) will be entitled to increase their tax basis, for federal income tax purposes, in their shares in that Fund by an amount equal to the excess of the amount of undistributed net capital gain included in their respective income over their respective income tax credits.

Notwithstanding the Distribution Requirement described above, the Fund will be subject to a nondeductible 4% federal excise tax on undistributed income if it does not distribute to its shareholders in each calendar year an amount at least equal to 98% of its ordinary income for the calendar year and 98.2% of its capital gain net income for the twelve months ended October 31 of such year, subject to an increase for any shortfall in the prior year's distribution. For this purpose, any ordinary income or capital gain net income retained by the Fund and subject to corporate income tax will be considered to have been distributed. The Fund intends to declare and distribute dividends and distributions in the amounts and at the times necessary to avoid the application of this 4% excise tax, but can make no assurances that such tax will be completely eliminated. The Fund may in certain circumstances be required to liquidate Fund investments in order to make sufficient distributions to avoid federal excise tax liability at a time when the investment adviser might not otherwise have chosen to do so, and liquidation of investments in such circumstances may affect the ability of the Fund to satisfy the requirement for qualification as a RIC.

The Fund may elect to treat part or all of any "qualified late year loss" as if it had been incurred in the succeeding taxable year in determining the Fund's taxable income, net capital gain, net short-term capital gain, and earnings and profits. The effect of this election is to treat any such "qualified late year loss" as if it had been incurred in the succeeding taxable year in characterizing Fund distributions for any calendar year. A "qualified late year loss" generally includes net capital loss, net long-term capital loss, or net short-term capital loss incurred after October 31 of the current taxable year (commonly referred to as "post-October losses") and certain other late-year losses.

Capital losses in excess of capital gains ("net capital losses") are not permitted to be deducted against a RIC's net investment income. Instead, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, potentially subject to certain limitations, a RIC may carry net capital losses from any taxable year forward to offset capital gains in future years. The Fund is permitted to carry net capital losses forward indefinitely. To the extent subsequent capital gains are offset by such losses, they will not result in U.S. federal income tax liability to the Fund and may not be distributed as capital gains to shareholders. Generally, the Fund may not carry forward any losses other than net capital losses. The carryover of capital losses may be limited under the general loss limitation rules if the Fund experiences an ownership change as defined in the Internal Revenue Code.

### **Taxation of Shareholders**

The Fund receives income generally in the form of dividends and interest on investments. This income, plus net short-term capital gains, if any, less expenses incurred in the operation of the Fund, constitutes the Fund's net investment income from which dividends may be paid to you. Any distributions by the Fund from such income will be taxable to you as ordinary income or at the lower capital gains rates that apply to individuals receiving qualified dividend income, whether you take them in cash or in additional shares.

Subject to certain limitations and requirements, dividends reported by the Fund as qualified dividend income will be taxable to non-corporate shareholders at rates of up to 20%. In general, dividends may be reported by the Fund as qualified dividend income if they are paid from dividends received by the Fund on common and preferred stock of U.S. corporations or on stock of certain eligible foreign corporations, provided that certain holding period and other requirements are met by the Fund with respect to the dividend-paying stocks in its portfolio. Subject to certain limitations, eligible foreign corporations include those incorporated in possessions of the United States or in certain countries with comprehensive tax treaties with the United States, and other foreign corporations if the stock with respect to which the dividends are paid is readily tradable on an established securities market in the United States. A dividend will not be treated as qualified dividend income to the extent that: (i) the shareholder has not held the shares on which the dividend was paid for more than 60 days during the 121-day period that begins on the date that is 60 days before the date on which the shares become "ex-dividend" (which is the day on which declared distributions (dividends or capital gains) are deducted from the Fund's assets before it calculates the net asset value) with respect to such dividend, (ii) the Fund has not satisfied similar holding period requirements with respect to the securities it holds that paid the dividends distributed to the shareholder), (iii) the shareholder is under an obligation (whether pursuant to a short sale or otherwise) to make related payments with respect to substantially similar or related property, or (iv) the shareholder elects to treat such dividend as investment income under section 163(d)(4)(B) of the Internal Revenue Code. Therefore, if you lend your shares in the Fund, such as pursuant to a securities lending arrangement, you may lose the ability to treat dividends (paid while the shares are held by the borrower) as qualified dividend income. Distributions that the Fund receives from an ETF, REIT or an underlying fund taxable as a RIC will be treated as qualified

dividend income only to the extent so reported by such ETF, REIT or underlying fund. The Fund's investment strategies may significantly limit its ability to distribute dividends eligible to be treated as qualified dividend income.

Distributions by the Fund of its net short-term capital gains will be taxable as ordinary income. Capital gains distributions consisting of the Fund's net capital gains will be taxable as long-term capital gains for individual shareholders currently set at a maximum rate of 20% regardless of how long you have held your shares in the Fund.

In the case of corporate shareholders, the Fund's distributions (other than capital gain distributions) generally qualify for the dividends-received deduction to the extent such distributions are so reported and do not exceed the gross amount of qualifying dividends received by the Fund for the year. Generally, and subject to certain limitations (including certain holding period limitations), a dividend will be treated as a qualifying dividend if it has been received from a domestic corporation. The Fund's trading strategies may significantly limit its ability to distribute dividends eligible for the dividends-received deduction for corporations.

The Fund's participation in loans of securities may affect the amount, timing, and character of distributions to its shareholders. If the Fund participates in a securities lending transaction and receives a payment in lieu of dividends (a "substitute payment") with respect to securities on loan in a securities lending transaction, such income generally will not constitute qualified dividend income and thus dividends attributable to such income will not be eligible for taxation at the rates applicable to qualified dividend income for individual shareholders and will not be eligible for the dividends-received deduction for corporate shareholders.

Although dividends generally will be treated as distributed when paid, any dividend declared by the Fund in October, November or December and payable to shareholders of record in such a month that is paid during the following January will be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as received by shareholders on December 31 of the calendar year in which it was declared. A taxable shareholder may wish to avoid investing in the Fund shortly before a dividend or other distribution, because the distribution will generally be taxable even though it may economically represent a return of a portion of the shareholder's investment.

If the Fund's distributions exceed its earnings and profits, all or a portion of the distributions made in the taxable year may be treated as a return of capital to shareholders. A return of capital distribution generally will not be taxable but will reduce the shareholder's cost basis and result in a higher capital gain or lower capital loss when the shares on which the distribution was received are sold. After a shareholder's basis in the shares has been reduced to zero, distributions in excess of earnings and profits will be treated as gain from the sale of the shareholder's shares.

The Fund's shareholders will be notified annually by the Fund (or their broker) as to the federal tax status of all distributions made by the Fund. Distributions may be subject to state and local taxes.

Shareholders who have not held Fund shares for a full year should be aware that the Fund may report and distribute to a shareholder, as ordinary dividends or capital gain dividends, a percentage of income that is not equal to the percentage of the Fund's ordinary income or net capital gain, respectively, actually earned during the shareholder's period of investment in the Fund.

Sales, Exchanges or Redemptions. A sale of shares or redemption of Creation Units in the Fund may give rise to a gain or loss. In general, any gain or loss realized upon a taxable disposition of shares will be treated as capital gain or loss if the shares are capital assets in the shareholder's hands, and will be long-term capital gain or loss if the shares have been held for more than twelve months, and short-term capital gain or loss if the shares are held for 12 months or less. However, if shares on which a shareholder has received a long-term capital gain distribution are subsequently sold, exchanged, or redeemed and such shares have been held for six months or less, any loss recognized will be treated as a long-term capital loss to the extent of the long-term capital gain distribution. In addition, the loss realized on a sale or other disposition of shares will be disallowed to the extent a shareholder repurchases (or enters into a contract or option to repurchase) shares within a period of 61 days (beginning 30 days before and ending 30 days after the disposition of the shares). This loss disallowance rule will apply to shares received through the reinvestment of dividends during the 61-day period. In such a case, the basis of the newly purchased shares will be adjusted to reflect the disallowed loss.

An Authorized Participant who exchanges securities for Creation Units generally will recognize gain or loss from the exchange. The gain or loss will be equal to the difference between the market value of the Creation Units at the time of the exchange and the sum of the exchanger's aggregate basis in the securities surrendered plus the amount of cash paid for such Creation Units. The ability of Authorized Participants to receive a full or partial cash redemption of Creation Units of the Fund may limit the tax efficiency of the Fund. A person who redeems Creation Units will generally recognize a gain or loss equal to the difference between the sum of the aggregate market value of any securities received plus the amount of any cash received for such Creation Units and the exchanger's basis in the Creation Units. The Internal Revenue Service ("IRS"), however, may assert that an Authorized Participant may not be permitted to currently deduct losses realized upon an exchange of securities for Creation Units under the rules governing "wash sales" (for an Authorized Participant that does not mark-to-market its holdings), or on the basis that there has been no significant change in economic position.

Any gain or loss realized upon the creation of Creation Units will generally be treated as long-term capital gain or loss if the securities exchanged for such Creation Units have been held for more than one year and were held as capital assets in the hands of the exchanging Authorized Participant. Any capital gain or loss realized upon a redemption of Creation Units will generally be treated as long-term capital gain or loss if the shares comprising the Creation Units have been held for more than one year. Otherwise, such capital gains or losses will be treated as short-term capital gains or losses. Any loss realized upon a redemption of Creation Units held for six months or less should be treated as a long-term capital loss to the extent of any amounts treated as distributions to the applicable Authorized Participant of long-term capital gains with respect to the Creation Units (including any amounts credited to the Authorized Participant as undistributed capital gains).

The Trust on behalf of the Fund has the right to reject an order for a purchase of shares of the Fund if the purchaser (or a group of purchasers) would, upon obtaining the shares so ordered, own 80% or more of the outstanding shares of the Fund and if, pursuant to Section 351 of the Internal Revenue Code, the Fund would have a basis in the securities different from the market value of such securities on the date of deposit. The Trust also has the right to require information necessary to determine beneficial Share ownership for purposes of the 80% determination. If the Fund does issue Creation Units to a purchaser (or a group of purchasers) that would, upon obtaining the shares so ordered, own 80% or more of the outstanding shares of the Fund, the purchaser (or group of purchasers) may not recognize gain or loss upon the exchange of securities for Creation Units.

Persons purchasing or redeeming Creation Units should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the tax treatment of any creation or redemption transaction and whether the wash sales rules apply and when a loss might be deductible.

**Medicare Tax.** U.S. individuals with adjusted gross income (subject to certain adjustments) exceeding certain threshold amounts (\$250,000 if married and filing jointly or if considered a "surviving spouse" for federal income tax purposes, \$125,000 if married filing separately, and \$200,000 in other cases) are subject to a 3.8% Medicare contribution tax on all or a portion of their "net investment income." This 3.8% tax also applies to all or a portion of the undistributed net investment income of certain shareholders that are estates and trusts. For these purposes, interest, dividends and certain capital gains (including capital gain distributions and capital gains realized on the sale of shares of the Fund or the redemption of Creation Units), among other categories of income, are generally taken into account in computing a shareholder's net investment income.

### **Taxation of Fund Investments**

Certain of the Fund's investments may be subject to complex provisions of the Internal Revenue Code (including provisions relating to hedging transactions, straddles, integrated transactions, foreign currency contracts, forward foreign currency contracts, and notional principal contracts) that, among other things, may affect the Fund's ability to qualify as a RIC, affect the character of gains and losses realized by the Fund (*e.g.*, may affect whether gains or losses are ordinary or capital), accelerate recognition of income to the Fund and defer losses and, in limited cases, subject the Fund to U.S. federal income tax on income from certain of its foreign securities. These rules could therefore affect the character, amount and timing of distributions to shareholders. These provisions also may require the Fund to mark to market certain types of positions in its portfolio (*i.e.*, treat them as if they were closed out) which may cause the Fund to recognize income without receiving cash with which to make distributions in amounts necessary to satisfy the RIC Distribution Requirement and for avoiding excise taxes. Accordingly, in order to avoid certain income and excise taxes, the Fund may be required to liquidate its investments at a time when the investment adviser might not otherwise have chosen to do so. The Fund intends to monitor its transactions,

intends to make appropriate tax elections, and intends to make appropriate entries in its books and records in order to mitigate the effect of these rules and preserve its qualification for treatment as a RIC.

With respect to investments in STRIPS, Treasury Receipts, and other zero coupon securities which are sold at original issue discount and thus do not make periodic cash interest payments, the Fund will be required to include as part of its current income the imputed interest on such obligations even though the Fund has not received any interest payments on such obligations during that period. Because the Fund intends to distribute all of its net investment income to its shareholders, the Fund may have to sell Fund securities to distribute such imputed income which may occur at a time when the Adviser would not have chosen to sell such securities and which may result in taxable gain or loss.

Any market discount recognized on a bond is taxable as ordinary income. A market discount bond is a bond acquired in the secondary market at a price below redemption value or adjusted issue price if issued with original issue discount. Absent an election by the Fund to include the market discount in income as it accrues, gain on the Fund's disposition of such an obligation will be treated as ordinary income rather than capital gain to the extent of the accrued market discount.

The Fund may invest in inflation-linked debt securities. Any increase in the principal amount of an inflation-linked debt security will be original interest discount, which is taxable as ordinary income and is required to be distributed, even though the Fund will not receive the principal, including any increase thereto, until maturity. As noted above, if the Fund invests in such securities it may be required to liquidate other investments, including at times when it is not advantageous to do so, in order to satisfy its distribution requirements and to eliminate any possible taxation at the Fund level.

REIT Investments. The Fund may invest in REITs. Investments in REIT equity securities may require the Fund to accrue and distribute income not yet received. To generate sufficient cash to make the requisite distributions, the Fund may be required to sell securities in its portfolio (including when it is not advantageous to do so) that it otherwise would have continued to hold. The Fund's investments in REIT equity securities may at other times result in the Fund's receipt of cash in excess of the REIT's earnings; if the Fund distributes these amounts, these distributions could constitute a return of capital to the Fund's shareholders for federal income tax purposes. Dividends paid by a REIT, other than capital gain distributions, will be taxable as ordinary income up to the amount of the REIT's current and accumulated earnings and profits. Capital gain dividends paid by a REIT to the Fund will be treated as long-term capital gains by the Fund and, in turn, may be distributed by the Fund to its shareholders as a capital gain distribution. Dividends received by the Fund from a REIT generally will not constitute qualified dividend income or qualify for the dividends received deduction. If a REIT is operated in a manner such that it fails to qualify as a REIT, an investment in the REIT would become subject to double taxation, meaning the taxable income of the REIT would be subject to federal income tax at the regular corporate rate without any deduction for dividends paid to shareholders and the dividends would be taxable to shareholders as ordinary income (or possibly as qualified dividend income) to the extent of the REIT's current and accumulated earnings and profits.

The Tax Act treats "qualified REIT dividends" (*i.e.*, ordinary REIT dividends other than capital gain dividends and portions of REIT dividends designated as qualified dividend income eligible for capital gain tax rates) as eligible for a 20% deduction by non-corporate taxpayers. This deduction, if allowed in full, equates to a maximum effective tax rate of 29.6% (37% top rate applied to income after 20% deduction). Pursuant to proposed Treasury regulations on which the Fund may rely, distributions by the Fund to its shareholders that are attributable to qualified REIT dividends received by the Fund and which the Fund properly reports as "Section 199A dividends," are treated as "qualified REIT dividends" in the hands of non-corporate shareholders. A Section 199A dividend is treated as a qualified REIT dividend only if the shareholder receiving such dividend holds the dividend-paying RIC shares for at least 46 days of the 91-day period beginning 45 days before the shares become ex-dividend, and is not under an obligation to make related payments with respect to a position in substantially similar or related property. The Fund is permitted to report such part of its dividends as Section 199A dividends as are eligible, but is not required to do so.

REITs in which the Fund invests often do not provide complete and final tax information to the Fund until after the time that the Fund issues a tax reporting statement. As a result, the Fund may at times find it necessary to reclassify the amount and character of its distributions to you after it issues your tax reporting statement. When such reclassification is necessary, the Fund (or its administrative agent) will send you a corrected, final Form 1099-DIV to reflect the reclassified information. If you receive a corrected Form 1099-DIV, use the information on this corrected form, and not the information on the previously issued tax reporting statement, in completing your tax returns.

**Backup Withholding.** The Fund will be required in certain cases to withhold (as “backup withholding”) at a 24% withholding rate and remit to the U.S. Treasury the withheld amount of dividends paid to any shareholder who: (1) fails to provide a correct taxpayer identification number certified under penalty of perjury; (2) is subject to backup withholding by the IRS for failure to properly report all payments of interest or dividends; (3) fails to provide a certified statement that he or she is not subject to backup withholding; or (4) fails to provide a certified statement that he or she is a U.S. person (including a U.S. resident alien). The backup withholding rate is 24% for tax years beginning after December 31, 2017 and before January 1, 2026.

### **Foreign Shareholders**

***Any foreign shareholders in the Fund may be subject to U.S. withholding and estate tax and are encouraged to consult their tax advisors prior to investing in the Fund.*** Foreign shareholders (*i.e.*, nonresident alien individuals and foreign corporations, partnerships, trusts and estates) are generally subject to U.S. withholding tax at the rate of 30% (or a lower tax treaty rate) on distributions derived from taxable ordinary income. The Fund may, under certain circumstances, report all or a portion of a dividend as an “interest-related dividend” or a “short-term capital gain dividend,” which would generally be exempt from this 30% U.S. withholding tax, provided certain other requirements are met. Short-term capital gain dividends received by a nonresident alien individual who is present in the U.S. for a period or periods aggregating 183 days or more during the taxable year are not exempt from this 30% withholding tax. Gains realized by foreign shareholders from the sale or other disposition of shares of the Fund generally are not subject to U.S. taxation, unless the recipient is an individual who is physically present in the U.S. for 183 days or more per year. Foreign shareholders who fail to provide an applicable IRS form may be subject to backup withholding on certain payments from the Fund. Backup withholding will not be applied to payments that are subject to the 30% (or lower applicable treaty rate) withholding tax described in this paragraph. Different tax consequences may result if the foreign shareholder is engaged in a trade or business within the United States. In addition, the tax consequences to a foreign shareholder entitled to claim the benefits of a tax treaty may be different than those described above.

Under legislation generally known as “FATCA” (the Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act), unless certain non-U.S. entities that hold Fund shares comply with IRS requirements that generally require them to report information regarding U.S. persons investing in, or holding accounts with, such entities, a 30% withholding tax may apply to Fund distributions payable to such entities. In general, no such withholding will be required with respect to a U.S. person or non-U.S. individual that timely provides the certifications required by a Fund or its agent on a valid IRS Form W-9 or applicable IRS Form W-8, respectively. Shareholders potentially subject to withholding include foreign financial institutions (“FFIs”), such as non-U.S. investment funds, and non-financial foreign entities (“NFFEs”). To avoid withholding under FATCA, an FFI generally must enter into an information sharing agreement with the IRS in which it agrees to report certain identifying information (including name, address, and taxpayer identification number) with respect to its U.S. account holders (which, in the case of an entity shareholder, may include its direct and indirect U.S. owners), and an NFFE generally must identify and provide other required information to the fund or other withholding agent regarding its U.S. owners, if any. Such non-U.S. shareholders also may fall into certain exempt, excepted or deemed compliant categories as established by regulations and other guidance. A non-U.S. shareholder may be exempt from the withholding described in this paragraph under an applicable intergovernmental agreement between the U.S. and a foreign government, provided that the shareholder and the applicable foreign government comply with the terms of the agreement.

A beneficial holder of shares who is a foreign person may be subject to foreign, state and local tax and to the U.S. federal estate tax in addition to the federal income tax consequences referred to above. If a shareholder is eligible for the benefits of a tax treaty, any effectively connected income or gain will generally be subject to U.S. federal income tax on a net basis only if it is also attributable to a permanent establishment or fixed base maintained by the shareholder in the United States.

**Tax-Exempt Shareholders.** Certain tax-exempt shareholders, including qualified pension plans, IRAs, salary deferral arrangements, 401(k)s, and other tax-exempt entities, generally are exempt from federal income taxation except with respect to their unrelated business taxable income (“UBTI”). Under the Tax Act, tax-exempt entities are not permitted to offset losses from one trade or business against the income or gain of another trade or business. Certain net losses incurred prior to January 1, 2018 are permitted to offset gain and income created by an unrelated trade or business, if otherwise available. Under current law, the Fund generally serves to block UBTI from being realized by its tax-exempt shareholders. However, notwithstanding the foregoing, the tax-exempt shareholder could realize UBTI by virtue of an investment in the Fund where,

for example: (i) the Fund invests in residual interests of Real Estate Mortgage Investment Conduits (“REMICs”), (ii) the Fund invests in a REIT that is a taxable mortgage pool (“TMP”) or that has a subsidiary that is a TMP or that invests in the residual interest of a REMIC, or (iii) shares in the Fund constitute debt-financed property in the hands of the tax-exempt shareholder within the meaning of section 514(b) of the Internal Revenue Code. Charitable remainder trusts are subject to special rules and should consult their tax advisor. The IRS has issued guidance with respect to these issues and prospective shareholders, especially charitable remainder trusts, are strongly encouraged to consult their tax advisors regarding these issues.

The Fund’s shares held in a tax-qualified retirement account will generally not be subject to federal taxation on income and capital gains distributions from the Fund until a shareholder begins receiving payments from their retirement account.

Certain Potential Tax Reporting Requirements. Under U.S. Treasury regulations, if a shareholder recognizes a loss of \$2 million or more for an individual shareholder or \$10 million or more for a corporate shareholder (or certain greater amounts over a combination of years), the shareholder must file with the IRS a disclosure statement on IRS Form 8886. Direct shareholders of portfolio securities are in many cases excepted from this reporting requirement, but under current guidance shareholders of a RIC are not excepted. A shareholder who fails to make the required disclosure to the IRS may be subject to substantial penalties. The fact that a loss is reportable under these regulations does not affect the legal determination of whether the taxpayer’s treatment of the loss is proper. Shareholders should consult their tax advisors to determine the applicability of these regulations in light of their individual circumstances.

Cost Basis Reporting. The cost basis of shares acquired by purchase will generally be based on the amount paid for the shares and then may be subsequently adjusted for other applicable transactions as required by the Code. The difference between the selling price and the cost basis of shares generally determines the amount of the capital gain or loss realized on the sale or exchange of shares. Contact the broker through whom you purchased your shares to obtain information with respect to the available cost basis reporting methods and elections for your account.

State Taxes. Depending upon state and local law, distributions by the Fund to its shareholders and the ownership of such shares may be subject to state and local taxes. Rules of state and local taxation of dividend and capital gains distributions from RICs often differ from the rules for federal income taxation described above. It is expected that the Fund will not be liable for any corporate excise, income or franchise tax in Delaware if it qualifies as a RIC for federal income tax purposes.

The foregoing discussion is based on U.S. federal tax laws and regulations which are in effect on the date of this SAI. Such laws and regulations may be changed by legislative or administrative action. Shareholders are advised to consult their tax advisors concerning their specific situations and the application of federal, state, local and foreign taxes.

## **FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

On June 22, 2018, the Fund acquired all of the assets and liabilities of the Predecessor Fund in exchange for shares of beneficial interest of the Fund. As a result of the Reorganization, the Fund adopted the financial and performance history of the Predecessor Fund.

The Fund’s audited financial statements for the fiscal year ended June 30, 2019, including notes thereto and the report of Cohen & Company, Ltd., the Fund’s independent registered public accounting firm, are incorporated by reference into this SAI. The information for all periods prior to the Reorganization was audited by the independent registered public accounting firm for the Predecessor Fund, which is a different firm from the Fund’s independent registered public accounting firm. The reports of the Fund’s prior independent registered public accounting firm, along with the Predecessor Fund’s financial statements (which have been adopted by the Fund), are included in the annual reports of the Predecessor Fund, which are available upon request.

## APPENDIX A

### Description of Short-Term Ratings

Description of certain short-term ratings assigned by Standard & Poor's Ratings Services ("S&P") and Moody's Investors Service ("Moody's"):

#### **S&P**

**A-1** - A short-term obligation rated 'A-1' is rated in the highest category by S&P. The obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is strong. Within this category, certain obligations are given a plus sign (+) designation. This indicates that the obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on these obligations is extremely strong.

**A-2** - A short-term obligation rated 'A-2' is somewhat more susceptible to the adverse effects of changes in circumstances and economic conditions than obligations in higher rating categories. However, the obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is satisfactory.

#### **Moody's**

##### Prime rating system (short-term)

Issuers rated **Prime-1** (or supporting institutions) have a superior ability for repayment of senior short-term debt obligations. Prime-1 repayment ability will often be evidenced by (a) leading market positions in well-established industries, (b) high rates of return on funds employed, (c) conservative capitalization structure with moderate reliance on debt and ample asset protection, (d) broad margins in earnings coverage of fixed financial charges and high internal cash generation, and (e) well-established access to a range of financial markets and assured sources of alternate liquidity.

Issuers rated **Prime-2** (or supporting institutions) have a strong ability for repayment of senior short-term debt obligations. This will normally be evidenced by many of the characteristics cited above but to a lesser degree. Earnings trends and coverage ratios, while sound, may be more subject to variation. Capitalization characteristics, while still appropriate, may be more affected by external conditions. Ample alternate liquidity is maintained.

Issuers rated **Prime-3** (or supporting institutions) have an acceptable ability for repayment of senior short-term obligations. The effect of industry characteristics and market compositions may be more pronounced. Variability in earnings and profitability may result in changes in the level of debt protection measurements and may require relatively high financial leverage. Adequate alternate liquidity is maintained.

### **Bond Ratings**

Below is a description of Standard & Poor's Ratings Group ("Standard & Poor's") and Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") bond rating categories.

#### **Standard & Poor's Ratings Group Corporate Bond Ratings**

**AAA** - This is the highest rating assigned by Standard & Poor's to a debt obligation and indicates an extremely strong capacity to pay principal and interest.

**AA** - Bonds rated "AA" also qualify as high-quality debt obligations. Capacity to pay principal and interest is very strong, and in the majority of instances they differ from "AAA" issues only in small degree.

**A** - Bonds rated "A" have a strong capacity to pay principal and interest, although they are somewhat more susceptible to the adverse effects of changes in circumstances and economic conditions than bonds in higher rated categories.

**BBB** - Bonds rated “BBB” are regarded as having an adequate capability to pay principal and interest. Whereas they normally exhibit adequate protection parameters, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to lead to a weakened capacity to pay principal and interest for bonds in this category than for bonds in higher rated categories.

**BB** - Bonds rated “BB” have less near-term vulnerability to default than other speculative issues. However, they face major ongoing uncertainties or exposure to adverse business, financial, or economic conditions which could lead to inadequate capacity to meet timely interest and principal payments.

**B** - Bonds rated “b” have a greater vulnerability to default but currently have the capacity to meet interest payments and principal repayments. Adverse business, financial, or economic conditions will likely impair capacity or willingness to pay interest and repay principal.

**CCC** - Bonds rated “CCC” have a currently identifiable vulnerability to default and are dependent upon favorable business, financial, and economic conditions to meet timely payment of interest and repayment of principal. In the event of adverse business, financial, or economic conditions, they are not likely to have the capacity to pay interest and repay principal.

### **Moody’s Investors Service, Inc. Corporate Bond Ratings**

**Aaa** - Bonds rated “Aaa” are judged to be of the best quality. They carry the smallest degree of investment risk and are generally referred to a “gilt-edged.” Interest payments are protected by a large or by an exceptionally stable margin, and principal is secure. While the various protective elements are likely to change, such changes as can be visualized are most unlikely to impair the fundamentally strong position of such issues.

**Aa** - Bonds rated “Aa” are judged to be of high quality by all standards. Together with the Aaa group, they comprise what are generally known as high grade bonds. They are rated lower than the best bonds because margins of protections may not be as large as in “Aaa” securities or fluctuation of protective elements may be of greater amplitude or there may be other elements present which make the long term risk appear somewhat larger than in “Aaa” securities.

**A** - Bonds rated “A” possess many favorable investment attributes, and are to be considered as upper medium grade obligations. Factors giving security principal and interest are considered adequate but elements may be present which suggest a susceptibility to impairment sometime in the future.

**Baa** - Bonds rated “Baa” are considered as medium grade obligations (*i.e.*, they are neither highly protected nor poorly secured). Interest payments and principal security appear adequate for the present but certain protective elements may be lacking or may be characteristically unreliable over any great length of time. Such bonds lack outstanding investment characteristics and in fact have speculative characteristics as well.

**Ba** - Bonds rated “Ba” are judged to have speculative elements. Their future cannot be considered as well assured. Often the protection of interest and principal payments may be very moderate and thereby not well safeguarded during both good and bad times over the future. Uncertainty of position characterizes bonds in this class.

## **APPENDIX B**

### **Exchange Traded Concepts, LLC**

#### **PROXY VOTING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

##### **Introduction**

Exchange Traded Concepts, LLC (“ETC”) recognizes that proxies for companies whose securities are held in client portfolios have an economic value, and it seeks to maximize that economic value by ensuring that votes are cast in a manner that it believes to be in the best interest of the affected clients. Proxies are considered client assets and are to be managed with the same care, skill and diligence as all other client assets.

##### **Proxy Voting Policies**

Proxy voting will be conducted by either ETC or the sub-advisers.<sup>1</sup> To the extent that ETC is responsible for proxy voting, ETC has engaged Institutional Shareholder Services (“ISS”), to provide research on proxy matters and voting recommendations, and to cast votes on behalf of ETC. ISS executes and maintains appropriate records related to the proxy voting process, and ETC has access to those records. ETC maintains records of differences, if any, between this Policy and the actual votes cast. ETC may, in the future, decide to engage a different proxy advisory firm.

ETC has reviewed ISS’s voting guidelines and has determined that those guidelines provide guidance in the best interest of ETC’s clients. This Policy and ISS’s proxy voting guidelines will be reviewed at least annually. This review will include, but will not necessarily be limited to, any proxy voting issues that may have arisen or any material conflicts of interest that were identified and the steps that were taken to resolve those conflicts.

There may be times when ETC believes that the best interests of the client will be better served if ETC votes a proxy counter to ISS’s guidelines pertaining to the matter to be voted upon. In those cases, ETC will generally review the research provided by ISS on the particular issue, and it may also conduct its own research or solicit additional research from another third party on the issue. After considering this information and, as necessary, discussing the issue with other relevant parties, ETC will determine how to vote on the issue in a manner which ETC believes is consistent with this Policy and in the best interests of the client.

Each sub-adviser’s proxy voting policies and procedures have been approved by the Trusts’ Board of Trustees and when a sub-adviser has been delegated authority to vote a proxy, it will vote such proxy in accordance with the approved proxy voting policies and procedures.

In addition, the sub-advisers may engage the services of an independent third party (“Proxy Firm”) to cast proxy votes according to the sub-advisers’ established guidelines. ETC has deemed in the best interest of clients to permit a sub-adviser the authority to cast proxy votes in accordance with the proxy voting policies submitted by that firm and approved by the Trusts’ Board of Trustees. The sub-adviser must promptly notify ETC of any proxy votes that are not voted consistently with the guidelines set forth in its policy.

##### *Conflict of Interest Identification and Resolution*

Although ETC does not believe that conflicts of interest will generally arise in connection with its proxy voting policies, ETC seeks to minimize the potential for conflict by utilizing the services of ISS to provide voting recommendations that are consistent with relevant regulatory requirements. Occasions may arise during the analysis and voting process in which the

---

<sup>1</sup> As of the date of the last revision to this Policy, ETC’s only clients are the series (or portfolios) of Exchange Traded Concepts Trust, Exchange Listed Funds Trust, and ETF Series Solutions (the “Trusts”) for which ETC serves as investment adviser. ETC has engaged one or more sub-advisers for such series. For some series, ETC is responsible for voting proxies and, for the remaining series, a sub-adviser is responsible for proxy voting.

best financial interests of clients might conflict with the interests of ISS. ISS has developed a “separation wall” as security between its proxy recommendation service and the other services it and its affiliated companies provide to clients who may also be a portfolio company for which proxies are solicited.

In resolving a conflict, ETC may decide to take one of the following courses of action: (1) determine that the conflict or potential conflict is not material, (2) request that disclosure be made to clients for whom proxies will be voted to disclose the conflict of interest and the recommended proxy vote and to obtain consent from such clients, (3) ETC may vote the proxy or engage an independent third-party or fiduciary to determine how the proxies should be voted, (4) abstain from voting or (5) take another course of action that adequately addresses the potential for conflict. Employees are required to report to the CCO any attempted or actual improper influence regarding proxy voting.

ETC will provide clients a copy of the complete Policy. ETC will also provide to clients, upon request, information on how their securities were voted.

## **Proxy Voting Operational Procedures**

### *Reconciliation Process*

Each account’s custodian provides holdings to ISS on a daily basis. Proxy materials are sent to ISS, which verifies that materials for future shareholder meetings are received for each record date position. ISS researches and resolves situations where expected proxy materials have not been received. ISS also notifies ETC of any proxy materials received that were not expected.

### *Voting Identified Proxies*

A proxy is identified when it is reported through the ISS automated system or when a custodian bank notifies ISS of its existence. As a general rule, ETC votes all proxies that it is entitled to vote that are identified within the solicitation period. ETC may apply a cost-benefit analysis to determine whether to vote a proxy. For example, if ETC is required to re-register shares of a company in order to vote a proxy and that re-registration process imposes trading and transfer restrictions on the shares, commonly referred to as “blocking,” ETC generally abstains from voting that proxy.

Although not necessarily an exhaustive list, other instances in which ETC may be unable or may determine not to vote a proxy are as follows: (1) situations where the underlying securities have been lent out pursuant to an account’s participation in a securities lending program and the cost-benefit ETC analysis indicates that the cost to recall the security outweighs the benefit; (2) instances when proxy materials are not delivered or are delivered in a manner that does not provide ETC sufficient time to analyze the proxy and make an informed decision by the voting deadline; and (3) occasions when required local-market documentation cannot be filed and approved prior to the proxy voting deadline.

### *Proxy Oversight Procedures*

In order to fulfill its oversight responsibilities related to the use of a proxy advisory firm, ETC will conduct a due diligence review of ISS annually and requests, at a minimum, the following information:

- ISS’ Policies, Procedures and Practices Regarding Potential Conflicts of Interest
- ISS’ Regulatory Code of Ethics
- The most recent SSAE 16 report of ISS controls conducted by an independent auditor (if available)
- ISS’ Form ADV Part 2 to determine whether ISS disclosed any new potential conflicts of interest

On a quarterly basis, ETC will request from ISS a certification indicating that all proxies were voted and voted in accordance with pre-determined guidelines and a summary of any material changes to the firm’s policies and procedures designed to address conflicts of interest. In addition, a Proxy Voting Record Report is reviewed by ETC on a periodic basis. The Proxy Voting Record Report includes all proxies that were voted during a period of time.

In order to fulfill its oversight responsibilities when a sub-adviser is responsible for voting proxies, ETC will request a certification of compliance and completion and review the sub-advisers' Proxy Voting Record Report on a periodic basis.

*Maintenance of Proxy Voting Records*

The following records are maintained for a period of five years, with records being maintained for the first two years on site:

- These policy and procedures, and any amendments thereto;
- Each proxy statement (the majority of which are maintained on a third-party automated system);
- Record of each vote cast;
- Documentation, if any, created by ETC that was material to making a decision how to vote proxies on behalf of a client or that memorializes the basis for a decision;
- Various reports related to the above procedures; and
- Each written client request for information and a copy of any written response by ETC to a client's written or oral request for information.



# United States

## Proxy Voting Guidelines

---

Benchmark Policy Recommendations

**Effective for Meetings on or after February 1, 2019**

**Published December 6, 2018**

## Table of Contents

<b>COVERAGE</b> .....	<b>8</b>
<b>1. BOARD OF DIRECTORS</b> .....	<b>9</b>
<b>VOTING ON DIRECTOR NOMINEES IN UNCONTESTED ELECTIONS</b> .....	<b>9</b>
Independence .....	9
ISS Classification of Directors – U.S. ....	10
Composition .....	12
Responsiveness .....	13
Accountability .....	13
<b>VOTING ON DIRECTOR NOMINEES IN CONTESTED ELECTIONS</b> .....	<b>17</b>
Vote-No Campaigns .....	17
Proxy Contests/Proxy Access — Voting for Director Nominees in Contested Elections .....	17
<b>OTHER BOARD-RELATED PROPOSALS</b> .....	<b>17</b>
Adopt Anti-Hedging/Pledging/Speculative Investments Policy .....	17
Age/Term Limits.....	17
Board Size .....	18
Classification/Declassification of the Board .....	18
CEO Succession Planning .....	18
Cumulative Voting .....	18
Director and Officer Indemnification and Liability Protection.....	18
Establish/Amend Nominee Qualifications .....	19
Establish Other Board Committee Proposals.....	19
Filling Vacancies/Removal of Directors .....	19
Independent Chair (Separate Chair/CEO) .....	19
Majority of Independent Directors/Establishment of Independent Committees .....	20
Majority Vote Standard for the Election of Directors .....	20
Proxy Access .....	21
Require More Nominees than Open Seats .....	21
Shareholder Engagement Policy (Shareholder Advisory Committee) .....	21
<b>2. AUDIT-RELATED</b> .....	<b>22</b>
Auditor Indemnification and Limitation of Liability .....	22
Auditor Ratification.....	22
Shareholder Proposals Limiting Non-Audit Services.....	22
Shareholder Proposals on Audit Firm Rotation .....	23
<b>3. SHAREHOLDER RIGHTS &amp; DEFENSES</b> .....	<b>24</b>
Advance Notice Requirements for Shareholder Proposals/Nominations .....	24
Amend Bylaws without Shareholder Consent .....	24
Control Share Acquisition Provisions .....	24
Control Share Cash-Out Provisions.....	24
Disgorgement Provisions .....	25
Fair Price Provisions .....	25

Freeze-Out Provisions .....	25
Greenmail .....	25
Litigation Rights (including Exclusive Venue and Fee-Shifting Bylaw Provisions) .....	25
Net Operating Loss (NOL) Protective Amendments .....	26
<b>POISON PILLS (SHAREHOLDER RIGHTS PLANS) .....</b>	<b>26</b>
Shareholder Proposals to Put Pill to a Vote and/or Adopt a Pill Policy .....	26
Management Proposals to Ratify a Poison Pill .....	27
Management Proposals to Ratify a Pill to Preserve Net Operating Losses (NOLs) .....	27
Proxy Voting Disclosure, Confidentiality, and Tabulation .....	27
Ratification Proposals: Management Proposals to Ratify Existing Charter or Bylaw Provisions .....	28
Reimbursing Proxy Solicitation Expenses .....	28
Reincorporation Proposals .....	28
Shareholder Ability to Act by Written Consent .....	28
Shareholder Ability to Call Special Meetings .....	29
Stakeholder Provisions .....	29
State Antitakeover Statutes .....	29
Supermajority Vote Requirements .....	29
<b>4. CAPITAL/RESTRUCTURING .....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>CAPITAL.....</b>	<b>31</b>
Adjustments to Par Value of Common Stock .....	31
Common Stock Authorization .....	31
Dual Class Structure .....	32
Issue Stock for Use with Rights Plan .....	32
Preemptive Rights .....	32
Preferred Stock Authorization .....	32
Recapitalization Plans .....	33
Reverse Stock Splits .....	33
Share Repurchase Programs .....	33
Stock Distributions: Splits and Dividends .....	33
Tracking Stock .....	33
<b>RESTRUCTURING .....</b>	<b>34</b>
Appraisal Rights .....	34
Asset Purchases .....	34
Asset Sales .....	34
Bundled Proposals .....	34
Conversion of Securities .....	34
Corporate Reorganization/Debt Restructuring/Prepackaged Bankruptcy Plans/Reverse Leveraged Buyouts/Wrap Plans .....	35
Formation of Holding Company .....	35
Going Private and Going Dark Transactions (LBOs and Minority Squeeze-outs) .....	35
Joint Ventures .....	36
Liquidations .....	36

Mergers and Acquisitions .....	36
Private Placements/Warrants/Convertible Debentures.....	37
Reorganization/Restructuring Plan (Bankruptcy) .....	38
Special Purpose Acquisition Corporations (SPACs).....	38
Special Purpose Acquisition Corporations (SPACs) - Proposals for Extensions .....	39
Spin-offs .....	39
Value Maximization Shareholder Proposals .....	39
<b>5. COMPENSATION .....</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>EXECUTIVE PAY EVALUATION .....</b>	<b>40</b>
Advisory Votes on Executive Compensation—Management Proposals (Management Say-on-Pay) .....	40
Pay-for-Performance Evaluation .....	41
Problematic Pay Practices .....	41
Compensation Committee Communications and Responsiveness .....	42
Frequency of Advisory Vote on Executive Compensation ("Say When on Pay").....	43
Voting on Golden Parachutes in an Acquisition, Merger, Consolidation, or Proposed Sale .....	43
<b>EQUITY-BASED AND OTHER INCENTIVE PLANS .....</b>	<b>44</b>
Shareholder Value Transfer (SVT) .....	45
Three-Year Burn Rate .....	45
Egregious Factors.....	45
Liberal Change in Control Definition .....	45
Repricing Provisions .....	45
Problematic Pay Practices or Significant Pay-for-Performance Disconnect .....	46
Amending Cash and Equity Plans (including Approval for Tax Deductibility (162(m)) .....	46
Specific Treatment of Certain Award Types in Equity Plan Evaluations .....	47
Dividend Equivalent Rights.....	47
Operating Partnership (OP) Units in Equity Plan Analysis of Real Estate Investment Trusts (REITs) .....	47
<b>OTHER COMPENSATION PLANS.....</b>	<b>47</b>
401(k) Employee Benefit Plans .....	47
Employee Stock Ownership Plans (ESOPs) .....	47
Employee Stock Purchase Plans—Qualified Plans.....	47
Employee Stock Purchase Plans—Non-Qualified Plans .....	47
Option Exchange Programs/Repricing Options .....	48
Stock Plans in Lieu of Cash.....	48
Transfer Stock Option (TSO) Programs .....	49
<b>DIRECTOR COMPENSATION.....</b>	<b>49</b>
Shareholder Ratification of Director Pay Programs .....	49
Equity Plans for Non-Employee Directors.....	50
Non-Employee Director Retirement Plans.....	50
<b>SHAREHOLDER PROPOSALS ON COMPENSATION.....</b>	<b>50</b>
Bonus Banking/Bonus Banking "Plus" .....	50
Compensation Consultants—Disclosure of Board or Company's Utilization .....	50
Disclosure/Setting Levels or Types of Compensation for Executives and Directors.....	51

Golden Coffins/Executive Death Benefits.....	51
Hold Equity Past Retirement or for a Significant Period of Time.....	51
Non-Deductible Compensation .....	51
Pay Disparity .....	51
Pay for Performance/Performance-Based Awards.....	52
Pay for Superior Performance .....	52
Pre-Arranged Trading Plans (10b5-1 Plans).....	53
Prohibit Outside CEOs from Serving on Compensation Committees .....	53
Recoupment of Incentive or Stock Compensation in Specified Circumstances .....	53
Severance Agreements for Executives/Golden Parachutes.....	53
Share Buyback Proposals .....	54
Supplemental Executive Retirement Plans (SERPs) .....	54
Tax Gross-Up Proposals .....	54
Termination of Employment Prior to Severance Payment/Eliminating Accelerated Vesting of Unvested Equity.....	54
<b>6. ROUTINE/MISCELLANEOUS.....</b>	<b>56</b>
Adjourn Meeting.....	56
Amend Quorum Requirements.....	56
Amend Minor Bylaws.....	56
Change Company Name .....	56
Change Date, Time, or Location of Annual Meeting.....	56
Other Business.....	56
<b>7. SOCIAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES.....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>GLOBAL APPROACH.....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>ENDORSEMENT OF PRINCIPLES .....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>ANIMAL WELFARE .....</b>	<b>57</b>
Animal Welfare Policies .....	57
Animal Testing .....	58
Animal Slaughter.....	58
<b>CONSUMER ISSUES.....</b>	<b>58</b>
Genetically Modified Ingredients .....	58
Reports on Potentially Controversial Business/Financial Practices .....	58
Pharmaceutical Pricing, Access to Medicines, and Prescription Drug Reimportation.....	59
Product Safety and Toxic/Hazardous Materials.....	59
Tobacco-Related Proposals.....	59
<b>CLIMATE CHANGE .....</b>	<b>60</b>
Climate Change/Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions .....	60
Energy Efficiency.....	61
Renewable Energy .....	61
<b>DIVERSITY .....</b>	<b>61</b>
Board Diversity .....	61
Equality of Opportunity .....	62
Gender Identity, Sexual Orientation, and Domestic Partner Benefits .....	62

Gender Pay Gap .....	62
<b>ENVIRONMENT AND SUSTAINABILITY .....</b>	<b>62</b>
Facility and Workplace Safety .....	62
General Environmental Proposals and Community Impact Assessments .....	63
Hydraulic Fracturing.....	63
Operations in Protected Areas .....	63
Recycling .....	63
Sustainability Reporting.....	64
Water Issues .....	64
<b>GENERAL CORPORATE ISSUES .....</b>	<b>64</b>
Charitable Contributions.....	64
Data Security, Privacy, and Internet Issues.....	64
Environmental, Social, and Governance (ESG) Compensation-Related Proposals .....	64
<b>HUMAN RIGHTS, LABOR ISSUES, AND INTERNATIONAL OPERATIONS .....</b>	<b>65</b>
Human Rights Proposals .....	65
Operations in High Risk Markets .....	65
Outsourcing/Offshoring.....	66
Weapons and Military Sales .....	66
<b>POLITICAL ACTIVITIES .....</b>	<b>66</b>
Lobbying.....	66
Political Contributions .....	66
Political Ties .....	67
<b>8. MUTUAL FUND PROXIES .....</b>	<b>68</b>
Election of Directors .....	68
Converting Closed-end Fund to Open-end Fund .....	68
Proxy Contests .....	68
Investment Advisory Agreements.....	68
Approving New Classes or Series of Shares .....	68
Preferred Stock Proposals.....	68
1940 Act Policies .....	69
Changing a Fundamental Restriction to a Nonfundamental Restriction .....	69
Change Fundamental Investment Objective to Nonfundamental.....	69
Name Change Proposals .....	69
Change in Fund's Subclassification .....	69
Business Development Companies—Authorization to Sell Shares of Common Stock at a Price below Net Asset Value .....	69
Disposition of Assets/Termination/Liquidation .....	70
Changes to the Charter Document .....	70
Changing the Domicile of a Fund.....	70
Authorizing the Board to Hire and Terminate Subadvisers Without Shareholder Approval .....	70
Distribution Agreements .....	71
Master-Feeder Structure .....	71

Mergers..... 71

**SHAREHOLDER PROPOSALS FOR MUTUAL FUNDS..... 71**

    Establish Director Ownership Requirement ..... 71

    Reimburse Shareholder for Expenses Incurred ..... 71

    Terminate the Investment Advisor ..... 71

## COVERAGE

The U.S. research team provides proxy analyses and voting recommendations for common shareholder meetings of publicly - traded U.S. - incorporated companies that are held in our institutional investor clients' portfolios and includes all S&P 1500 and Russell 3000 companies that are considered U.S. Domestic Issuers by the SEC. Coverage generally includes corporate actions for common equity holders, such as written consents and bankruptcies. ISS' U.S. coverage includes investment companies (including open-end funds, closed-end funds, exchange-traded funds, and unit investment trusts), limited partnerships ("LPs"), master limited partnerships ("MLPs"), limited liability companies ("LLCs"), and business development companies. ISS reviews its universe of coverage on an annual basis, and the coverage is subject to change based on client need and industry trends.

The U.S. research team also produces, for subscribing clients, research and recommendations for fixed income meetings, and meetings of certain preferred securities, including Auction Rate Preferred Securities ("ARPS") and Variable Rate Municipal Term Preferred securities ("VMTPs").

### Foreign-incorporated companies

In addition to U.S. - incorporated companies, U.S. policies are applied to certain foreign-incorporated company analyses. Like the SEC, ISS distinguishes two types of companies that list but are not incorporated in the U.S.:

- › U.S. Domestic Issuers – which have a majority of outstanding shares held in the U.S. and meet other criteria, as determined by the SEC, and are subject to the same disclosure and listing standards as U.S. incorporated companies – are generally covered under standard U.S. policy guidelines.
- › Foreign Private Issuers (FPIs) – which do not meet the Domestic Issuer criteria and are exempt from most disclosure requirements (e.g., they do not file DEF14A reports) and listing standards (e.g., for required levels of board and committee independence) – are covered under a combination of policy guidelines:
  - › FPI Guidelines (see the [Americas Regional Proxy Voting Guidelines](#)), which apply certain minimum independence and disclosure standards in the evaluation of key proxy ballot items, such as the election of directors and approval of financial reports; and
  - › For other issues, guidelines for the market that is responsible for, or most relevant to, the item on the ballot.

In all cases – including with respect to other companies with cross-market features that may lead to ballot items related to multiple markets – items that are on the ballot solely due to the requirements of another market (listing, incorporation, or national code) may be evaluated under the policy of the relevant market, regardless of the “assigned” market coverage.

## 1. BOARD OF DIRECTORS

### Voting on Director Nominees in Uncontested Elections

Four fundamental principles apply when determining votes on director nominees:

**Independence:** Boards should be sufficiently independent from management (and significant shareholders) to ensure that they are able and motivated to effectively supervise management's performance for the benefit of all shareholders, including in setting and monitoring the execution of corporate strategy, with appropriate use of shareholder capital, and in setting and monitoring executive compensation programs that support that strategy. The chair of the board should ideally be an independent director, and all boards should have an independent leadership position or a similar role in order to help provide appropriate counterbalance to executive management, as well as having sufficiently independent committees that focus on key governance concerns such as audit, compensation, and nomination of directors.

**Composition:** Companies should ensure that directors add value to the board through their specific skills and expertise and by having sufficient time and commitment to serve effectively. Boards should be of a size appropriate to accommodate diversity, expertise, and independence, while ensuring active and collaborative participation by all members. Boards should be sufficiently diverse to ensure consideration of a wide range of perspectives.

**Responsiveness:** Directors should respond to investor input, such as that expressed through significant opposition to management proposals, significant support for shareholder proposals (whether binding or non-binding), and tender offers where a majority of shares are tendered.

**Accountability:** Boards should be sufficiently accountable to shareholders, including through transparency of the company's governance practices and regular board elections, by the provision of sufficient information for shareholders to be able to assess directors and board composition, and through the ability of shareholders to remove directors.

 **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for director nominees, except under the following circumstances:

#### Independence

Vote against<sup>1</sup> or withhold from non-independent directors (Executive Directors and Non-Independent Non-Executive Directors per [ISS' Classification of Directors](#)) when:

- › Independent directors comprise 50 percent or less of the board;
- › The non-independent director serves on the audit, compensation, or nominating committee;
- › The company lacks an audit, compensation, or nominating committee so that the full board functions as that committee; or
- › The company lacks a formal nominating committee, even if the board attests that the independent directors fulfill the functions of such a committee.

---

<sup>1</sup> In general, companies with a plurality vote standard use "Withhold" as the contrary vote option in director elections; companies with a majority vote standard use "Against". However, it will vary by company and the proxy must be checked to determine the valid contrary vote option for the particular company.

**ISS Classification of Directors – U.S.**

1. **Executive Director**
  - 1.1. Current employee or current officer<sup>1</sup> of the company or one of its affiliates<sup>2</sup>.
2. **Non-Independent Non-Executive Director**
  - Board Identification
    - 2.1. Director identified as not independent by the board.
  - Controlling/Significant Shareholder
    - 2.2. Beneficial owner of more than 50 percent of the company's voting power (this may be aggregated if voting power is distributed among more than one member of a group).
  - Former CEO/Interim Officer
    - 2.3. Former CEO of the company.<sup>3,4</sup>
    - 2.4. Former CEO of an acquired company within the past five years.<sup>4</sup>
    - 2.5. Former interim officer if the service was longer than 18 months. If the service was between 12 and 18 months an assessment of the interim officer's employment agreement will be made.<sup>5</sup>
  - Non-CEO Executives
    - 2.6. Former officer<sup>1</sup> of the company, an affiliate<sup>2</sup>, or an acquired firm within the past five years.
    - 2.7. Officer<sup>1</sup> of a former parent or predecessor firm at the time the company was sold or split off from the parent/predecessor within the past five years.
    - 2.8. Officer<sup>1</sup>, former officer, or general or limited partner of a joint venture or partnership with the company.
  - Family Members
    - 2.9. Immediate family member<sup>6</sup> of a current or former officer<sup>1</sup> of the company or its affiliates<sup>2</sup> within the last five years.
    - 2.10. Immediate family member<sup>6</sup> of a current employee of company or its affiliates<sup>2</sup> where additional factors raise concern (which may include, but are not limited to, the following: a director related to numerous employees; the company or its affiliates employ relatives of numerous board members; or a non-Section 16 officer in a key strategic role).
  - Transactional, Professional, Financial, and Charitable Relationships
    - 2.11. Currently provides (or an immediate family member<sup>6</sup> provides) professional services<sup>7</sup> to the company, to an affiliate<sup>2</sup> of the company or an individual officer of the company or one of its affiliates in excess of \$10,000 per year.
    - 2.12. Is (or an immediate family member<sup>6</sup> is) a partner in, or a controlling shareholder or an employee of, an organization which provides professional services<sup>7</sup> to the company, to an affiliate<sup>2</sup> of the company, or an individual officer of the company or one of its affiliates in excess of \$10,000 per year.
    - 2.13. Has (or an immediate family member<sup>6</sup> has) any material transactional relationship<sup>8</sup> with the company or its affiliates<sup>2</sup> (excluding investments in the company through a private placement).
    - 2.14. Is (or an immediate family member<sup>6</sup> is) a partner in, or a controlling shareholder or an executive officer of, an organization which has any material transactional relationship<sup>8</sup> with the company or its affiliates<sup>2</sup> (excluding investments in the company through a private placement).
    - 2.15. Is (or an immediate family member<sup>6</sup> is) a trustee, director, or employee of a charitable or non-profit organization that receives material grants or endowments<sup>8</sup> from the company or its affiliates<sup>2</sup>.
  - Other Relationships
    - 2.16. Party to a voting agreement<sup>9</sup> to vote in line with management on proposals being brought to shareholder vote.
    - 2.17. Has (or an immediate family member<sup>6</sup> has) an interlocking relationship as defined by the SEC involving members of the board of directors or its Compensation Committee.<sup>10</sup>
    - 2.18. Founder<sup>11</sup> of the company but not currently an employee.
    - 2.19. Any material<sup>12</sup> relationship with the company.
3. **Independent Director**
  - 3.1. No material<sup>12</sup> connection to the company other than a board seat.

**Footnotes:**

1. The definition of officer will generally follow that of a “Section 16 officer” (officers subject to Section 16 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934) and includes the chief executive, operating, financial, legal, technology, and accounting officers of a company (including the president, treasurer, secretary, controller, or any vice president in charge of a principal business unit, division, or policy function). Current interim officers are included in this category. For private companies, the equivalent positions are applicable. A non-employee director serving as an officer due to statutory requirements (e.g. corporate secretary) will generally be classified as a Non-Independent Non-Executive Director under 2.19: “Any material relationship with the company.” However, if the company provides explicit disclosure that the director is not receiving additional compensation exceeding \$10,000 per year for serving in that capacity, then the director will be classified as an Independent Director.
2. “Affiliate” includes a subsidiary, sibling company, or parent company. ISS uses 50 percent control ownership by the parent company as the standard for applying its affiliate designation.
3. Includes any former CEO of the company prior to the company’s initial public offering (IPO).
4. When there is a former CEO of a special purpose acquisition company (SPAC) serving on the board of an acquired company, ISS will generally classify such directors as independent unless determined otherwise taking into account the following factors: the applicable listing standards determination of such director’s independence; any operating ties to the firm; and the existence of any other conflicting relationships or related party transactions.
5. ISS will look at the terms of the interim officer’s employment contract to determine if it contains severance pay, long-term health and pension benefits, or other such standard provisions typically contained in contracts of permanent, non-temporary CEOs. ISS will also consider if a formal search process was under way for a full-time officer at the time.
6. “Immediate family member” follows the SEC’s definition of such and covers spouses, parents, children, step-parents, step-children, siblings, in-laws, and any person (other than a tenant or employee) sharing the household of any director, nominee for director, executive officer, or significant shareholder of the company.
7. Professional services can be characterized as advisory in nature, generally involve access to sensitive company information or to strategic decision-making, and typically have a commission- or fee-based payment structure. Professional services generally include but are not limited to the following: investment banking/financial advisory services, commercial banking (beyond deposit services), investment services, insurance services, accounting/audit services, consulting services, marketing services, legal services, property management services, realtor services, lobbying services, executive search services, and IT consulting services. The following would generally be considered transactional relationships and not professional services: deposit services, IT tech support services, educational services, and construction services. The case of participation in a banking syndicate by a non-lead bank should be considered a transactional (and hence subject to the associated materiality test) rather than a professional relationship. “Of Counsel” relationships are only considered immaterial if the individual does not receive any form of compensation (in excess of \$10,000 per year) from, or is a retired partner of, the firm providing the professional service. The case of a company providing a professional service to one of its directors or to an entity with which one of its directors is affiliated, will be considered a transactional rather than a professional relationship. Insurance services and marketing services are assumed to be professional services unless the company explains why such services are not advisory.
8. A material transactional relationship, including grants to non-profit organizations, exists if the company makes annual payments to, or receives annual payments from, another entity, exceeding the greater of: \$200,000 or 5 percent of the recipient’s gross revenues, for a company that follows NASDAQ listing standards; or the greater of \$1,000,000 or 2 percent of the recipient’s gross revenues, for a company that follows NYSE listing standards. For a company that follows neither of the preceding standards, ISS will apply the NASDAQ-based materiality test. (The recipient is the party receiving the financial proceeds from the transaction).
9. Dissident directors who are parties to a voting agreement pursuant to a settlement or similar arrangement may be classified as Independent Directors if an analysis of the following factors indicates that the voting agreement does not compromise their alignment with all shareholders’ interests: the terms of the agreement; the duration of the standstill provision in the agreement; the limitations and requirements of actions that are agreed upon; if the dissident director nominee(s) is subject to the standstill; and if there any conflicting relationships or related party transactions.
10. Interlocks include: executive officers serving as directors on each other’s compensation or similar committees (or, in the absence of such a committee, on the board); or executive officers sitting on each other’s boards and at least one serves on the other’s compensation or similar committees (or, in the absence of such a committee, on the board).

11. The operating involvement of the founder with the company will be considered; if the founder was never employed by the company, ISS may deem him or her an Independent Director.

12. For purposes of ISS's director independence classification, "material" will be defined as a standard of relationship (financial, personal or otherwise) that a reasonable person might conclude could potentially influence one's objectivity in the boardroom in a manner that would have a meaningful impact on an individual's ability to satisfy requisite fiduciary standards on behalf of shareholders.

## Composition

**Attendance at Board and Committee Meetings:** Generally vote against or withhold from directors (except new nominees, who should be considered case-by-case<sup>2</sup>) who attend less than 75 percent of the aggregate of their board and committee meetings for the period for which they served, unless an acceptable reason for absences is disclosed in the proxy or another SEC filing. Acceptable reasons for director absences are generally limited to the following:

- › Medical issues/illness;
- › Family emergencies; and
- › Missing only one meeting (when the total of all meetings is three or fewer).

In cases of chronic poor attendance without reasonable justification, in addition to voting against the director(s) with poor attendance, generally vote against or withhold from appropriate members of the nominating/governance committees or the full board.

If the proxy disclosure is unclear and insufficient to determine whether a director attended at least 75 percent of the aggregate of his/her board and committee meetings during his/her period of service, vote against or withhold from the director(s) in question.

**Overboarded Directors:** Generally vote against or withhold from individual directors who:

- › Sit on more than five public company boards; or
- › Are CEOs of public companies who sit on the boards of more than two public companies besides their own— withhold only at their outside boards<sup>3</sup>.

**Diversity:** Highlight boards with no gender diversity. For 2019 meetings, no adverse vote recommendations will be made due to a lack of gender diversity.

For companies in the Russell 3000 or S&P 1500 indices, effective for meetings on or after Feb. 1, 2020, generally vote against or withhold from the chair of the nominating committee (or other directors on a case-by-case basis) at companies when there are no women on the company's board. Mitigating factors include:

- › A firm commitment, as stated in the proxy statement, to appoint at least one female to the board in the near term;
- › The presence of a female on the board at the preceding annual meeting; or
- › Other relevant factors as applicable.

---

<sup>2</sup> New nominees who served for only part of the fiscal year are generally exempted from the attendance policy.

<sup>3</sup> Although all of a CEO's subsidiary boards with publicly-traded common stock will be counted as separate boards, ISS will not recommend a withhold vote for the CEO of a parent company board or any of the controlled (>50 percent ownership) subsidiaries of that parent but may do so at subsidiaries that are less than 50 percent controlled and boards outside the parent/subsidiary relationships.

## Responsiveness

Vote case-by-case on individual directors, committee members, or the entire board of directors as appropriate if:

- › The board failed to act on a shareholder proposal that received the support of a majority of the shares cast in the previous year or failed to act on a management proposal seeking to ratify an existing charter/bylaw provision that received opposition of a majority of the shares cast in the previous year. Factors that will be considered are:
  - › Disclosed outreach efforts by the board to shareholders in the wake of the vote;
  - › Rationale provided in the proxy statement for the level of implementation;
  - › The subject matter of the proposal;
  - › The level of support for and opposition to the resolution in past meetings;
  - › Actions taken by the board in response to the majority vote and its engagement with shareholders;
  - › The continuation of the underlying issue as a voting item on the ballot (as either shareholder or management proposals); and
  - › Other factors as appropriate.
- › The board failed to act on takeover offers where the majority of shares are tendered;
- › At the previous board election, any director received more than 50 percent withhold/against votes of the shares cast and the company has failed to address the issue(s) that caused the high withhold/against vote.

Vote case-by-case on Compensation Committee members (or, in exceptional cases, the full board) and the Say on Pay proposal if:

- › The company's previous say-on-pay received the support of less than 70 percent of votes cast. Factors that will be considered are:
  - › The company's response, including:
    - › Disclosure of engagement efforts with major institutional investors, including the frequency and timing of engagements and the company participants (including whether independent directors participated);
    - › Disclosure of the specific concerns voiced by dissenting shareholders that led to the say-on-pay opposition;
    - › Disclosure of specific and meaningful actions taken to address shareholders' concerns;
  - › Other recent compensation actions taken by the company;
  - › Whether the issues raised are recurring or isolated;
  - › The company's ownership structure; and
  - › Whether the support level was less than 50 percent, which would warrant the highest degree of responsiveness.
- › The board implements an advisory vote on executive compensation on a less frequent basis than the frequency that received the plurality of votes cast.

## Accountability

Vote against or withhold from the entire board of directors (except new nominees<sup>4</sup>, who should be considered case-by-case) for the following:

### *Problematic Takeover Defenses/Governance Structure*

---

<sup>4</sup> A "new nominee" is any current nominee who has not already been elected by shareholders and who joined the board after the problematic action in question transpired. If ISS cannot determine whether the nominee joined the board before or after the problematic action transpired, the nominee will be considered a "new nominee" if he or she joined the board within the 12 months prior to the upcoming shareholder meeting.

**Poison Pills:** Vote against or withhold from all nominees (except new nominees, who should be considered case-by-case) if:

- › The company has a poison pill that was not approved by shareholders<sup>5</sup>. However, vote case-by-case on nominees if the board adopts an initial pill with a term of one year or less, depending on the disclosed rationale for the adoption, and other factors as relevant (such as a commitment to put any renewal to a shareholder vote).
- › The board makes a material adverse modification to an existing pill, including, but not limited to, extension, renewal, or lowering the trigger, without shareholder approval.

**Classified Board Structure:** The board is classified, and a continuing director responsible for a problematic governance issue at the board/committee level that would warrant a withhold/against vote recommendation is not up for election. All appropriate nominees (except new) may be held accountable.

**Removal of Shareholder Discretion on Classified Boards:** The company has opted into, or failed to opt out of, state laws requiring a classified board structure.

**Director Performance Evaluation:** The board lacks mechanisms to promote accountability and oversight, coupled with sustained poor performance relative to peers. Sustained poor performance is measured by one-, three-, and five-year total shareholder returns in the bottom half of a company's four-digit GICS industry group (Russell 3000 companies only). Take into consideration the company's operational metrics and other factors as warranted. Problematic provisions include but are not limited to:

- › A classified board structure;
- › A supermajority vote requirement;
- › Either a plurality vote standard in uncontested director elections, or a majority vote standard in contested elections;
- › The inability of shareholders to call special meetings;
- › The inability of shareholders to act by written consent;
- › A multi-class capital structure; and/or
- › A non-shareholder-approved poison pill.

**Unilateral Bylaw/Charter Amendments and Problematic Capital Structures:** Generally vote against or withhold from directors individually, committee members, or the entire board (except new nominees, who should be considered case-by-case) if the board amends the company's bylaws or charter without shareholder approval in a manner that materially diminishes shareholders' rights or that could adversely impact shareholders, considering the following factors:

- › The board's rationale for adopting the bylaw/charter amendment without shareholder ratification;
- › Disclosure by the company of any significant engagement with shareholders regarding the amendment;
- › The level of impairment of shareholders' rights caused by the board's unilateral amendment to the bylaws/charter;
- › The board's track record with regard to unilateral board action on bylaw/charter amendments or other entrenchment provisions;
- › The company's ownership structure;
- › The company's existing governance provisions;
- › The timing of the board's amendment to the bylaws/charter in connection with a significant business development; and
- › Other factors, as deemed appropriate, that may be relevant to determine the impact of the amendment on shareholders.

---

<sup>5</sup> Public shareholders only, approval prior to a company's becoming public is insufficient.

Unless the adverse amendment is reversed or submitted to a binding shareholder vote, in subsequent years vote case-by-case on director nominees. Generally vote against (except new nominees, who should be considered case-by-case) if the directors:

- › Classified the board;
- › Adopted supermajority vote requirements to amend the bylaws or charter; or
- › Eliminated shareholders' ability to amend bylaws.

**Problematic Governance Structure - Newly public companies:** For newly public companies, generally vote against or withhold from directors individually, committee members, or the entire board (except new nominees, who should be considered case-by-case) if, prior to or in connection with the company's public offering, the company or its board adopted bylaw or charter provisions materially adverse to shareholder rights, or implemented a multi-class capital structure in which the classes have unequal voting rights considering the following factors:

- › The level of impairment of shareholders' rights;
- › The disclosed rationale;
- › The ability to change the governance structure (e.g., limitations on shareholders' right to amend the bylaws or charter, or supermajority vote requirements to amend the bylaws or charter);
- › The ability of shareholders to hold directors accountable through annual director elections, or whether the company has a classified board structure;
- › Any reasonable sunset provision; and
- › Other relevant factors.

Unless the adverse provision and/or problematic capital structure is reversed or removed, vote case-by-case on director nominees in subsequent years.

**Management Proposals to Ratify Existing Charter or Bylaw Provisions:** Vote against/withhold from individual directors, members of the governance committee, or the full board, where boards ask shareholders to ratify existing charter or bylaw provisions considering the following factors:

- › The presence of a shareholder proposal addressing the same issue on the same ballot;
- › The board's rationale for seeking ratification;
- › Disclosure of actions to be taken by the board should the ratification proposal fail;
- › Disclosure of shareholder engagement regarding the board's ratification request;
- › The level of impairment to shareholders' rights caused by the existing provision;
- › The history of management and shareholder proposals on the provision at the company's past meetings;
- › Whether the current provision was adopted in response to the shareholder proposal;
- › The company's ownership structure; and
- › Previous use of ratification proposals to exclude shareholder proposals.

### ***Restrictions on Shareholders' Rights***

**Restricting Binding Shareholder Proposals:** Generally vote against or withhold from the members of the governance committee if:

- › The company's governing documents impose undue restrictions on shareholders' ability to amend the bylaws. Such restrictions include but are not limited to: outright prohibition on the submission of binding shareholder proposals or share ownership requirements or time holding requirements in excess of SEC Rule 14a-8. Vote against on an ongoing basis.

### ***Problematic Audit-Related Practices***

Generally vote against or withhold from the members of the Audit Committee if:

- › The non-audit fees paid to the auditor are [excessive](#);
- › The company receives an adverse opinion on the company's financial statements from its auditor; or
- › There is persuasive evidence that the Audit Committee entered into an inappropriate indemnification agreement with its auditor that limits the ability of the company, or its shareholders, to pursue legitimate legal recourse against the audit firm.

Vote case-by-case on members of the Audit Committee and potentially the full board if:

- › Poor accounting practices are identified that rise to a level of serious concern, such as: fraud; misapplication of GAAP; and material weaknesses identified in Section 404 disclosures. Examine the severity, breadth, chronological sequence, and duration, as well as the company's efforts at remediation or corrective actions, in determining whether withhold/against votes are warranted.

### ***Problematic Compensation Practices***

In the absence of an Advisory Vote on Executive Compensation (Say on Pay) ballot item or in egregious situations, vote against or withhold from the members of the Compensation Committee and potentially the full board if:

- › There is an unmitigated misalignment between CEO pay and company performance ([pay for performance](#));
- › The company maintains significant [problematic pay practices](#); or
- › The board exhibits a significant level of [poor communication and responsiveness](#) to shareholders.

Generally vote against or withhold from the Compensation Committee chair, other committee members, or potentially the full board if:

- › The company fails to include a Say on Pay ballot item when required under SEC provisions, or under the company's declared frequency of say on pay; or
- › The company fails to include a Frequency of Say on Pay ballot item when required under SEC provisions.

Generally vote against members of the board committee responsible for approving/setting non-employee director compensation if there is a pattern (i.e. two or more years) of awarding excessive non-employee director compensation without disclosing a compelling rationale or other mitigating factors.

### ***Problematic Pledging of Company Stock:***

Vote against the members of the committee that oversees risks related to pledging, or the full board, where a significant level of pledged company stock by executives or directors raises concerns. The following factors will be considered:

- › The presence of an anti-pledging policy, disclosed in the proxy statement, that prohibits future pledging activity;
- › The magnitude of aggregate pledged shares in terms of total common shares outstanding, market value, and trading volume;
- › Disclosure of progress or lack thereof in reducing the magnitude of aggregate pledged shares over time;
- › Disclosure in the proxy statement that shares subject to stock ownership and holding requirements do not include pledged company stock; and
- › Any other relevant factors.

### ***Governance Failures***

Under extraordinary circumstances, vote against or withhold from directors individually, committee members, or the entire board, due to:

---

- › Material failures of governance, stewardship, risk oversight<sup>6</sup>, or fiduciary responsibilities at the company;
- › Failure to replace management as appropriate; or
- › Egregious actions related to a director's service on other boards that raise substantial doubt about his or her ability to effectively oversee management and serve the best interests of shareholders at any company.

## Voting on Director Nominees in Contested Elections

### Vote-No Campaigns

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** In cases where companies are targeted in connection with public “vote-no” campaigns, evaluate director nominees under the existing governance policies for voting on director nominees in uncontested elections. Take into consideration the arguments submitted by shareholders and other publicly available information.

### Proxy Contests/Proxy Access — Voting for Director Nominees in Contested Elections

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on the election of directors in contested elections, considering the following factors:
  - › Long-term financial performance of the company relative to its industry;
  - › Management's track record;
  - › Background to the contested election;
  - › Nominee qualifications and any compensatory arrangements;
  - › Strategic plan of dissident slate and quality of the critique against management;
  - › Likelihood that the proposed goals and objectives can be achieved (both slates); and
  - › Stock ownership positions.

In the case of candidates nominated pursuant to proxy access, vote case-by-case considering any applicable factors listed above or additional factors which may be relevant, including those that are specific to the company, to the nominee(s) and/or to the nature of the election (such as whether there are more candidates than board seats).

## Other Board-Related Proposals

### Adopt Anti-Hedging/Pledging/Speculative Investments Policy

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals seeking a policy that prohibits named executive officers from engaging in derivative or speculative transactions involving company stock, including hedging, holding stock in a margin account, or pledging stock as collateral for a loan. However, the company's existing policies regarding responsible use of company stock will be considered.

### Age/Term Limits

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against management and shareholder proposals to limit the tenure of outside directors through mandatory retirement ages.

---

<sup>6</sup> Examples of failure of risk oversight include but are not limited to: bribery; large or serial fines or sanctions from regulatory bodies; significant adverse legal judgments or settlement; or hedging of company stock.

Vote against management proposals to limit the tenure of outside directors through term limits. However, scrutinize boards where the average tenure of all directors exceeds 15 years for independence from management and for sufficient turnover to ensure that new perspectives are being added to the board.

### Board Size

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals seeking to fix the board size or designate a range for the board size.

Vote against proposals that give management the ability to alter the size of the board outside of a specified range without shareholder approval.

### Classification/Declassification of the Board

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals to classify (stagger) the board. Vote for proposals to repeal classified boards and to elect all directors annually.

### CEO Succession Planning

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals seeking disclosure on a CEO succession planning policy, considering, at a minimum, the following factors:
  - › The reasonableness/scope of the request; and
  - › The company's existing disclosure on its current CEO succession planning process.

### Cumulative Voting

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against management proposals to eliminate cumulate voting, and for shareholder proposals to restore or provide for cumulative voting, unless:
  - › The company has proxy access<sup>7</sup>, thereby allowing shareholders to nominate directors to the company's ballot; and
  - › The company has adopted a majority vote standard, with a carve-out for plurality voting in situations where there are more nominees than seats, and a director resignation policy to address failed elections.

Vote for proposals for cumulative voting at controlled companies (insider voting power > 50%).

### Director and Officer Indemnification and Liability Protection

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals on director and officer indemnification and liability protection.

Vote against proposals that would:

- › Eliminate entirely directors' and officers' liability for monetary damages for violating the duty of care.
- › Expand coverage beyond just legal expenses to liability for acts that are more serious violations of fiduciary obligation than mere carelessness.
- › Expand the scope of indemnification to provide for mandatory indemnification of company officials in connection with acts that previously the company was permitted to provide indemnification for, at the discretion of the company's board (*i.e.*, "permissive indemnification"), but that previously the company was not required to indemnify.

---

<sup>7</sup> A proxy access right that meets the [recommended guidelines](#).

Vote for only those proposals providing such expanded coverage in cases when a director's or officer's legal defense was unsuccessful if both of the following apply:

- › If the director was found to have acted in good faith and in a manner that s/he reasonably believed was in the best interests of the company; and
- › If only the director's legal expenses would be covered.

### Establish/Amend Nominee Qualifications

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals that establish or amend director qualifications. Votes should be based on the reasonableness of the criteria and the degree to which they may preclude dissident nominees from joining the board.

Vote case-by-case on shareholder resolutions seeking a director nominee who possesses a particular subject matter expertise, considering:

- › The company's board committee structure, existing subject matter expertise, and board nomination provisions relative to that of its peers;
- › The company's existing board and management oversight mechanisms regarding the issue for which board oversight is sought;
- › The company's disclosure and performance relating to the issue for which board oversight is sought and any significant related controversies; and
- › The scope and structure of the proposal.

### Establish Other Board Committee Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against shareholder proposals to establish a new board committee, as such proposals seek a specific oversight mechanism/structure that potentially limits a company's flexibility to determine an appropriate oversight mechanism for itself. However, the following factors will be considered:

- › Existing oversight mechanisms (including current committee structure) regarding the issue for which board oversight is sought;
- › Level of disclosure regarding the issue for which board oversight is sought;
- › Company performance related to the issue for which board oversight is sought;
- › Board committee structure compared to that of other companies in its industry sector; and
- › The scope and structure of the proposal.

### Filling Vacancies/Removal of Directors

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals that provide that directors may be removed only for cause. Vote for proposals to restore shareholders' ability to remove directors with or without cause. Vote against proposals that provide that only continuing directors may elect replacements to fill board vacancies. Vote for proposals that permit shareholders to elect directors to fill board vacancies.

### Independent Chair (Separate Chair/CEO)

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for shareholder proposals requiring that the chairman's position be filled by an independent director, taking into consideration the following:

- › The scope of the proposal;
- › The company's current board leadership structure;
- › The company's governance structure and practices;

- › Company performance; and
- › Any other relevant factors that may be applicable.

Regarding the scope of the proposal, consider whether the proposal is precatory or binding and whether the proposal is seeking an immediate change in the chairman role or the policy can be implemented at the next CEO transition.

Under the review of the company's board leadership structure, ISS may support the proposal under the following scenarios absent a compelling rationale: the presence of an executive or non-independent chair in addition to the CEO; a recent recombination of the role of CEO and chair; and/or departure from a structure with an independent chair. ISS will also consider any recent transitions in board leadership and the effect such transitions may have on independent board leadership as well as the designation of a lead director role.

When considering the governance structure, ISS will consider the overall independence of the board, the independence of key committees, the establishment of governance guidelines, board tenure and its relationship to CEO tenure, and any other factors that may be relevant. Any concerns about a company's governance structure will weigh in favor of support for the proposal.

The review of the company's governance practices may include, but is not limited to, poor compensation practices, material failures of governance and risk oversight, related-party transactions or other issues putting director independence at risk, corporate or management scandals, and actions by management or the board with potential or realized negative impact on shareholders. Any such practices may suggest a need for more independent oversight at the company thus warranting support of the proposal.

ISS' performance assessment will generally consider one-, three-, and five-year TSR compared to the company's peers and the market as a whole. While poor performance will weigh in favor of the adoption of an independent chair policy, strong performance over the long term will be considered a mitigating factor when determining whether the proposed leadership change warrants support.

### Majority of Independent Directors/Establishment of Independent Committees

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for shareholder proposals asking that a majority or more of directors be independent unless the board composition already meets the proposed threshold by ISS' definition of Independent Director (See [ISS' Classification of Directors.](#))

Vote for shareholder proposals asking that board audit, compensation, and/or nominating committees be composed exclusively of independent directors unless they currently meet that standard.

### Majority Vote Standard for the Election of Directors

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for management proposals to adopt a majority of votes cast standard for directors in uncontested elections. Vote against if no carve-out for a plurality vote standard in contested elections is included.

Generally vote for precatory and binding shareholder resolutions requesting that the board change the company's bylaws to stipulate that directors need to be elected with an affirmative majority of votes cast, provided it does not conflict with the state law where the company is incorporated. Binding resolutions need to allow for a carve-out for a plurality vote standard when there are more nominees than board seats.

Companies are strongly encouraged to also adopt a post-election policy (also known as a director resignation policy) that will provide guidelines so that the company will promptly address the situation of a holdover director.

## Proxy Access

▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for management and shareholder proposals for proxy access with the following provisions:

- › **Ownership threshold:** maximum requirement not more than three percent (3%) of the voting power;
- › **Ownership duration:** maximum requirement not longer than three (3) years of continuous ownership for each member of the nominating group;
- › **Aggregation:** minimal or no limits on the number of shareholders permitted to form a nominating group;
- › **Cap:** cap on nominees of generally twenty-five percent (25%) of the board.

Review for reasonableness any other restrictions on the right of proxy access.  
Generally vote against proposals that are more restrictive than these guidelines.

## Require More Nominees than Open Seats

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against shareholder proposals that would require a company to nominate more candidates than the number of open board seats.

## Shareholder Engagement Policy (Shareholder Advisory Committee)

▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for shareholder proposals requesting that the board establish an internal mechanism/process, which may include a committee, in order to improve communications between directors and shareholders, unless the company has the following features, as appropriate:

- › Established a communication structure that goes beyond the exchange requirements to facilitate the exchange of information between shareholders and members of the board;
- › Effectively disclosed information with respect to this structure to its shareholders;
- › Company has not ignored majority-supported shareholder proposals or a majority withhold vote on a director nominee; and
- › The company has an independent chairman or a lead director, according to ISS' definition. This individual must be made available for periodic consultation and direct communication with major shareholders.

## 2. AUDIT-RELATED

### Auditor Indemnification and Limitation of Liability

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on the issue of auditor indemnification and limitation of liability. Factors to be assessed include, but are not limited to:

- › The terms of the auditor agreement—the degree to which these agreements impact shareholders' rights;
- › The motivation and rationale for establishing the agreements;
- › The quality of the company's disclosure; and
- › The company's historical practices in the audit area.

Vote against or withhold from members of an audit committee in situations where there is persuasive evidence that the audit committee entered into an inappropriate indemnification agreement with its auditor that limits the ability of the company, or its shareholders, to pursue legitimate legal recourse against the audit firm.

### Auditor Ratification

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to ratify auditors unless any of the following apply:

- › An auditor has a financial interest in or association with the company, and is therefore not independent;
- › There is reason to believe that the independent auditor has rendered an opinion that is neither accurate nor indicative of the company's financial position;
- › Poor accounting practices are identified that rise to a serious level of concern, such as fraud or misapplication of GAAP; or
- › Fees for non-audit services ("Other" fees) are excessive.

Non-audit fees are excessive if:

- › Non-audit ("other") fees > audit fees + audit-related fees + tax compliance/preparation fees

Tax compliance and preparation include the preparation of original and amended tax returns and refund claims, and tax payment planning. All other services in the tax category, such as tax advice, planning, or consulting, should be added to "Other" fees. If the breakout of tax fees cannot be determined, add all tax fees to "Other" fees.

In circumstances where "Other" fees include fees related to significant one-time capital structure events (such as initial public offerings, bankruptcy emergence, and spin-offs) and the company makes public disclosure of the amount and nature of those fees that are an exception to the standard "non-audit fee" category, then such fees may be excluded from the non-audit fees considered in determining the ratio of non-audit to audit/audit-related fees/tax compliance and preparation for purposes of determining whether non-audit fees are excessive.

### Shareholder Proposals Limiting Non-Audit Services

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on shareholder proposals asking companies to prohibit or limit their auditors from engaging in non-audit services.

## Shareholder Proposals on Audit Firm Rotation

 **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on shareholder proposals asking for audit firm rotation, taking into account:

- › The tenure of the audit firm;
- › The length of rotation specified in the proposal;
- › Any significant audit-related issues at the company;
- › The number of Audit Committee meetings held each year;
- › The number of financial experts serving on the committee; and
- › Whether the company has a periodic renewal process where the auditor is evaluated for both audit quality and competitive price.

### 3. SHAREHOLDER RIGHTS & DEFENSES

#### Advance Notice Requirements for Shareholder Proposals/Nominations

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on advance notice proposals, giving support to those proposals which allow shareholders to submit proposals/nominations as close to the meeting date as reasonably possible and within the broadest window possible, recognizing the need to allow sufficient notice for company, regulatory, and shareholder review.

To be reasonable, the company's deadline for shareholder notice of a proposal/nominations must not be more than 60 days prior to the meeting, with a submittal window of at least 30 days prior to the deadline. The submittal window is the period under which a shareholder must file his proposal/nominations prior to the deadline.

In general, support additional efforts by companies to ensure full disclosure in regard to a proponent's economic and voting position in the company so long as the informational requirements are reasonable and aimed at providing shareholders with the necessary information to review such proposals.

#### Amend Bylaws without Shareholder Consent

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals giving the board exclusive authority to amend the bylaws.

Vote case-by-case on proposals giving the board the ability to amend the bylaws in addition to shareholders, taking into account the following:

- › Any impediments to shareholders' ability to amend the bylaws (i.e. supermajority voting requirements);
- › The company's ownership structure and historical voting turnout;
- › Whether the board could amend bylaws adopted by shareholders; and
- › Whether shareholders would retain the ability to ratify any board-initiated amendments.

#### Control Share Acquisition Provisions

Control share acquisition statutes function by denying shares their voting rights when they contribute to ownership in excess of certain thresholds. Voting rights for those shares exceeding ownership limits may only be restored by approval of either a majority or supermajority of disinterested shares. Thus, control share acquisition statutes effectively require a hostile bidder to put its offer to a shareholder vote or risk voting disenfranchisement if the bidder continues buying up a large block of shares.

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to opt out of control share acquisition statutes unless doing so would enable the completion of a takeover that would be detrimental to shareholders.

Vote against proposals to amend the charter to include control share acquisition provisions.

Vote for proposals to restore voting rights to the control shares.

#### Control Share Cash-Out Provisions

Control share cash-out statutes give dissident shareholders the right to "cash-out" of their position in a company at the expense of the shareholder who has taken a control position. In other words, when an investor crosses a preset threshold level, remaining shareholders are given the right to sell their shares to the acquirer, who must buy them at the highest acquiring price.

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to opt out of control share cash-out statutes.

### Disgorgement Provisions

Disgorgement provisions require an acquirer or potential acquirer of more than a certain percentage of a company's stock to disgorge, or pay back, to the company any profits realized from the sale of that company's stock purchased 24 months before achieving control status. All sales of company stock by the acquirer occurring within a certain period of time (between 18 months and 24 months) prior to the investor's gaining control status are subject to these recapture-of-profits provisions.

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to opt out of state disgorgement provisions.

### Fair Price Provisions

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to adopt fair price provisions (provisions that stipulate that an acquirer must pay the same price to acquire all shares as it paid to acquire the control shares), evaluating factors such as the vote required to approve the proposed acquisition, the vote required to repeal the fair price provision, and the mechanism for determining the fair price.

Generally vote against fair price provisions with shareholder vote requirements greater than a majority of disinterested shares.

### Freeze-Out Provisions

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to opt out of state freeze-out provisions. Freeze-out provisions force an investor who surpasses a certain ownership threshold in a company to wait a specified period of time before gaining control of the company.

### Greenmail

Greenmail payments are targeted share repurchases by management of company stock from individuals or groups seeking control of the company. Since only the hostile party receives payment, usually at a substantial premium over the market value of its shares, the practice discriminates against all other shareholders.

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to adopt anti-greenmail charter or bylaw amendments or otherwise restrict a company's ability to make greenmail payments.

Vote case-by-case on anti-greenmail proposals when they are bundled with other charter or bylaw amendments.

### Litigation Rights (including Exclusive Venue and Fee-Shifting Bylaw Provisions)

Bylaw provisions impacting shareholders' ability to bring suit against the company may include exclusive venue provisions, which provide that the state of incorporation shall be the sole venue for certain types of litigation, and fee-shifting provisions that require a shareholder who sues a company unsuccessfully to pay all litigation expenses of the defendant corporation.

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on bylaws which impact shareholders' litigation rights, taking into account factors such as:

- › The company's stated rationale for adopting such a provision;
- › Disclosure of past harm from shareholder lawsuits in which plaintiffs were unsuccessful or shareholder lawsuits outside the jurisdiction of incorporation;
- › The breadth of application of the bylaw, including the types of lawsuits to which it would apply and the definition of key terms; and
- › Governance features such as shareholders' ability to repeal the provision at a later date (including the vote standard applied when shareholders attempt to amend the bylaws) and their ability to hold directors accountable through annual director elections and a majority vote standard in uncontested elections.

Generally vote against bylaws that mandate fee-shifting whenever plaintiffs are not completely successful on the merits (i.e., in cases where the plaintiffs are partially successful).

Unilateral adoption by the board of bylaw provisions which affect shareholders' litigation rights will be evaluated under ISS' policy on [Unilateral Bylaw/Charter Amendments](#).

### Net Operating Loss (NOL) Protective Amendments

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals to adopt a protective amendment for the stated purpose of protecting a company's net operating losses (NOL) if the effective term of the protective amendment would exceed the shorter of three years and the exhaustion of the NOL.

Vote case-by-case, considering the following factors, for management proposals to adopt an NOL protective amendment that would remain in effect for the shorter of three years (or less) and the exhaustion of the NOL:

- › The ownership threshold (NOL protective amendments generally prohibit stock ownership transfers that would result in a new 5-percent holder or increase the stock ownership percentage of an existing 5-percent holder);
- › The value of the NOLs;
- › Shareholder protection mechanisms (sunset provision or commitment to cause expiration of the protective amendment upon exhaustion or expiration of the NOL);
- › The company's existing governance structure including: board independence, existing takeover defenses, track record of responsiveness to shareholders, and any other problematic governance concerns; and
- › Any other factors that may be applicable.

### Poison Pills (Shareholder Rights Plans)

#### Shareholder Proposals to Put Pill to a Vote and/or Adopt a Pill Policy

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for shareholder proposals requesting that the company submit its poison pill to a shareholder vote or redeem it unless the company has: (1) A shareholder approved poison pill in place; or (2) The company has adopted a policy concerning the adoption of a pill in the future specifying that the board will only adopt a shareholder rights plan if either:
  - › Shareholders have approved the adoption of the plan; or
  - › The board, in its exercise of its fiduciary responsibilities, determines that it is in the best interest of shareholders under the circumstances to adopt a pill without the delay in adoption that would result from seeking stockholder approval (i.e., the "fiduciary out" provision). A poison pill adopted under this fiduciary out will be put to a shareholder ratification vote within 12 months of adoption or expire. If the pill is not approved by a majority of the votes cast on this issue, the plan will immediately terminate.

If the shareholder proposal calls for a time period of less than 12 months for shareholder ratification after adoption, vote for the proposal, but add the caveat that a vote within 12 months would be considered sufficient implementation.

## Management Proposals to Ratify a Poison Pill

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on management proposals on poison pill ratification, focusing on the features of the shareholder rights plan. Rights plans should contain the following attributes:
- › No lower than a 20 percent trigger, flip-in or flip-over;
  - › A term of no more than three years;
  - › No dead-hand, slow-hand, no-hand, or similar feature that limits the ability of a future board to redeem the pill;
  - › Shareholder redemption feature (qualifying offer clause); if the board refuses to redeem the pill 90 days after a qualifying offer is announced, 10 percent of the shares may call a special meeting or seek a written consent to vote on rescinding the pill.

In addition, the rationale for adopting the pill should be thoroughly explained by the company. In examining the request for the pill, take into consideration the company's existing governance structure, including: board independence, existing takeover defenses, and any problematic governance concerns.

## Management Proposals to Ratify a Pill to Preserve Net Operating Losses (NOLs)

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals to adopt a poison pill for the stated purpose of protecting a company's net operating losses (NOL) if the term of the pill would exceed the shorter of three years and the exhaustion of the NOL.

Vote case-by-case on management proposals for poison pill ratification, considering the following factors, if the term of the pill would be the shorter of three years (or less) and the exhaustion of the NOL:

- › The ownership threshold to transfer (NOL pills generally have a trigger slightly below 5 percent);
- › The value of the NOLs;
- › Shareholder protection mechanisms (sunset provision, or commitment to cause expiration of the pill upon exhaustion or expiration of NOLs);
- › The company's existing governance structure including: board independence, existing takeover defenses, track record of responsiveness to shareholders, and any other problematic governance concerns; and
- › Any other factors that may be applicable.

## Proxy Voting Disclosure, Confidentiality, and Tabulation

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals regarding proxy voting mechanics, taking into consideration whether implementation of the proposal is likely to enhance or protect shareholder rights. Specific issues covered under the policy include, but are not limited to, confidential voting of individual proxies and ballots, confidentiality of running vote tallies, and the treatment of abstentions and/or broker non-votes in the company's vote-counting methodology.

While a variety of factors may be considered in each analysis, the guiding principles are: transparency, consistency, and fairness in the proxy voting process. The factors considered, as applicable to the proposal, may include:

- › The scope and structure of the proposal;
- › The company's stated confidential voting policy (or other relevant policies) and whether it ensures a "level playing field" by providing shareholder proponents with equal access to vote information prior to the annual meeting;
- › The company's vote standard for management and shareholder proposals and whether it ensures consistency and fairness in the proxy voting process and maintains the integrity of vote results;
- › Whether the company's disclosure regarding its vote counting method and other relevant voting policies with respect to management and shareholder proposals are consistent and clear;
- › Any recent controversies or concerns related to the company's proxy voting mechanics;
- › Any unintended consequences resulting from implementation of the proposal; and

- › Any other factors that may be relevant.

### Ratification Proposals: Management Proposals to Ratify Existing Charter or Bylaw Provisions

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against management proposals to ratify provisions of the company's existing charter or bylaws, unless these governance provisions align with best practice.

In addition, voting against/withhold from individual directors, members of the governance committee, or the full board may be warranted, considering:

- › The presence of a shareholder proposal addressing the same issue on the same ballot;
- › The board's rationale for seeking ratification;
- › Disclosure of actions to be taken by the board should the ratification proposal fail;
- › Disclosure of shareholder engagement regarding the board's ratification request;
- › The level of impairment to shareholders' rights caused by the existing provision;
- › The history of management and shareholder proposals on the provision at the company's past meetings;
- › Whether the current provision was adopted in response to the shareholder proposal;
- › The company's ownership structure; and
- › Previous use of ratification proposals to exclude shareholder proposals.

### Reimbursing Proxy Solicitation Expenses

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to reimburse proxy solicitation expenses.

When voting in conjunction with support of a dissident slate, vote for the reimbursement of all appropriate proxy solicitation expenses associated with the election.

Generally vote for shareholder proposals calling for the reimbursement of reasonable costs incurred in connection with nominating one or more candidates in a contested election where the following apply:

- › The election of fewer than 50 percent of the directors to be elected is contested in the election;
- › One or more of the dissident's candidates is elected;
- › Shareholders are not permitted to cumulate their votes for directors; and
- › The election occurred, and the expenses were incurred, after the adoption of this bylaw.

### Reincorporation Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Management or shareholder proposals to change a company's state of incorporation should be evaluated case-by-case, giving consideration to both financial and corporate governance concerns including the following:
  - › Reasons for reincorporation;
  - › Comparison of company's governance practices and provisions prior to and following the reincorporation; and
  - › Comparison of corporation laws of original state and destination state.

Vote for reincorporation when the economic factors outweigh any neutral or negative governance changes.

### Shareholder Ability to Act by Written Consent

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against management and shareholder proposals to restrict or prohibit shareholders' ability to act by written consent.

Generally vote for management and shareholder proposals that provide shareholders with the ability to act by written consent, taking into account the following factors:

- › Shareholders' current right to act by written consent;
- › The consent threshold;
- › The inclusion of exclusionary or prohibitive language;
- › Investor ownership structure; and
- › Shareholder support of, and management's response to, previous shareholder proposals.

Vote case-by-case on shareholder proposals if, in addition to the considerations above, the company has the following governance and antitakeover provisions:

- › An unfettered<sup>8</sup> right for shareholders to call special meetings at a 10 percent threshold;
- › A majority vote standard in uncontested director elections;
- › No non-shareholder-approved pill; and
- › An annually elected board.

### Shareholder Ability to Call Special Meetings

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against management or shareholder proposals to restrict or prohibit shareholders' ability to call special meetings.

Generally vote for management or shareholder proposals that provide shareholders with the ability to call special meetings taking into account the following factors:

- › Shareholders' current right to call special meetings;
- › Minimum ownership threshold necessary to call special meetings (10 percent preferred);
- › The inclusion of exclusionary or prohibitive language;
- › Investor ownership structure; and
- › Shareholder support of, and management's response to, previous shareholder proposals.

### Stakeholder Provisions

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals that ask the board to consider non-shareholder constituencies or other non-financial effects when evaluating a merger or business combination.

### State Antitakeover Statutes

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to opt in or out of state takeover statutes (including fair price provisions, stakeholder laws, poison pill endorsements, severance pay and labor contract provisions, and anti-greenmail provisions).

### Supermajority Vote Requirements

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals to require a supermajority shareholder vote.

---

<sup>8</sup> "Unfettered" means no restrictions on agenda items, no restrictions on the number of shareholders who can group together to reach the 10 percent threshold, and only reasonable limits on when a meeting can be called: no greater than 30 days after the last annual meeting and no greater than 90 prior to the next annual meeting.

Vote for management or shareholder proposals to reduce supermajority vote requirements. However, for companies with shareholder(s) who have significant ownership levels, vote case-by-case, taking into account:

- › Ownership structure;
- › Quorum requirements; and
- › Vote requirements.

## 4. CAPITAL/RESTRUCTURING

### Capital

#### Adjustments to Par Value of Common Stock

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for management proposals to reduce the par value of common stock unless the action is being taken to facilitate an anti-takeover device or some other negative corporate governance action.

Vote for management proposals to eliminate par value.

#### Common Stock Authorization

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to increase the number of authorized common shares where the primary purpose of the increase is to issue shares in connection with a transaction on the same ballot that warrants support.

Vote against proposals at companies with more than one class of common stock to increase the number of authorized shares of the class of common stock that has superior voting rights.

Vote against proposals to increase the number of authorized common shares if a vote for a reverse stock split on the same ballot is warranted despite the fact that the authorized shares would not be reduced proportionally.

Vote case-by-case on all other proposals to increase the number of shares of common stock authorized for issuance. Take into account company-specific factors that include, at a minimum, the following:

- › Past Board Performance:
  - › The company's use of authorized shares during the last three years;
- › The Current Request:
  - › Disclosure in the proxy statement of the specific purposes of the proposed increase;
  - › Disclosure in the proxy statement of specific and severe risks to shareholders of not approving the request; and
  - › The dilutive impact of the request as determined relative to an allowable increase calculated by ISS (typically 100 percent of existing authorized shares) that reflects the company's need for shares and total shareholder returns.

ISS will apply the relevant allowable increase below to requests to increase common stock that are for general corporate purposes (or to the general corporate purposes portion of a request that also includes a specific need):

- Most companies: **100 percent** of existing authorized shares.
- Companies with less than 50 percent of existing authorized shares either outstanding or reserved for issuance: **50 percent** of existing authorized shares.
- Companies with one- and three-year total shareholder returns (TSRs) in the bottom 10 percent of the U.S. market as of the end of the calendar quarter that is closest to their most recent fiscal year end: **50 percent** of existing authorized shares.
- Companies at which both conditions (B and C) above are both present: **25 percent** of existing authorized shares.

If there is an acquisition, private placement, or similar transaction on the ballot (not including equity incentive plans) that ISS is recommending FOR, the allowable increase will be the greater of (i) twice the amount needed to support the transactions on the ballot, and (ii) the allowable increase as calculated above.

## Dual Class Structure

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against proposals to create a new class of common stock unless:
  - › The company discloses a compelling rationale for the dual-class capital structure, such as:
    - › The company's auditor has concluded that there is substantial doubt about the company's ability to continue as a going concern; or
    - › The new class of shares will be transitory;
  - › The new class is intended for financing purposes with minimal or no dilution to current shareholders in both the short term and long term; and
  - › The new class is not designed to preserve or increase the voting power of an insider or significant shareholder.

## Issue Stock for Use with Rights Plan

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals that increase authorized common stock for the explicit purpose of implementing a non-shareholder-approved shareholder rights plan (poison pill).

## Preemptive Rights

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on shareholder proposals that seek preemptive rights, taking into consideration:
  - › The size of the company;
  - › The shareholder base; and
  - › The liquidity of the stock.

## Preferred Stock Authorization

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to increase the number of authorized preferred shares where the primary purpose of the increase is to issue shares in connection with a transaction on the same ballot that warrants support.

Vote against proposals at companies with more than one class or series of preferred stock to increase the number of authorized shares of the class or series of preferred stock that has superior voting rights.

Vote case-by-case on all other proposals to increase the number of shares of preferred stock authorized for issuance. Take into account company-specific factors that include, at a minimum, the following:

- › Past Board Performance:
  - › The company's use of authorized preferred shares during the last three years;
- › The Current Request:
  - › Disclosure in the proxy statement of the specific purposes for the proposed increase;
  - › Disclosure in the proxy statement of specific and severe risks to shareholders of not approving the request;
  - › In cases where the company has existing authorized preferred stock, the dilutive impact of the request as determined by an allowable increase calculated by ISS (typically 100 percent of existing authorized shares) that reflects the company's need for shares and total shareholder returns; and
  - › Whether the shares requested are blank check preferred shares that can be used for antitakeover purposes.

## Recapitalization Plans

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on recapitalizations (reclassifications of securities), taking into account the following:

- › More simplified capital structure;
- › Enhanced liquidity;
- › Fairness of conversion terms;
- › Impact on voting power and dividends;
- › Reasons for the reclassification;
- › Conflicts of interest; and
- › Other alternatives considered.

## Reverse Stock Splits

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for management proposals to implement a reverse stock split if:

- › The number of authorized shares will be proportionately reduced; or
- › The effective increase in authorized shares is equal to or less than the allowable increase calculated in accordance with ISS' [Common Stock Authorization](#) policy.

Vote case-by-case on proposals that do not meet either of the above conditions, taking into consideration the following factors:

- › Stock exchange notification to the company of a potential delisting;
- › Disclosure of substantial doubt about the company's ability to continue as a going concern without additional financing;
- › The company's rationale; or
- › Other factors as applicable.

## Share Repurchase Programs

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for management proposals to institute open-market share repurchase plans in which all shareholders may participate on equal terms.

## Stock Distributions: Splits and Dividends

▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for management proposals to increase the common share authorization for stock split or stock dividend, provided that the effective increase in authorized shares is equal to or is less than the allowable increase calculated in accordance with ISS' Common Stock Authorization policy.

## Tracking Stock

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on the creation of tracking stock, weighing the strategic value of the transaction against such factors as:

- › Adverse governance changes;
- › Excessive increases in authorized capital stock;
- › Unfair method of distribution;
- › Diminution of voting rights;
- › Adverse conversion features;

- › Negative impact on stock option plans; and
- › Alternatives such as spin-off.

## Restructuring

### Appraisal Rights

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to restore or provide shareholders with rights of appraisal.

### Asset Purchases

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on asset purchase proposals, considering the following factors:
  - › Purchase price;
  - › Fairness opinion;
  - › Financial and strategic benefits;
  - › How the deal was negotiated;
  - › Conflicts of interest;
  - › Other alternatives for the business;
  - › Non-completion risk.

### Asset Sales

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on asset sales, considering the following factors:
  - › Impact on the balance sheet/working capital;
  - › Potential elimination of diseconomies;
  - › Anticipated financial and operating benefits;
  - › Anticipated use of funds;
  - › Value received for the asset;
  - › Fairness opinion;
  - › How the deal was negotiated;
  - › Conflicts of interest.

### Bundled Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on bundled or “conditional” proxy proposals. In the case of items that are conditioned upon each other, examine the benefits and costs of the packaged items. In instances when the joint effect of the conditioned items is not in shareholders’ best interests, vote against the proposals. If the combined effect is positive, support such proposals.

### Conversion of Securities

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals regarding conversion of securities. When evaluating these proposals, the investor should review the dilution to existing shareholders, the conversion price relative to market value, financial issues, control issues, termination penalties, and conflicts of interest.

Vote for the conversion if it is expected that the company will be subject to onerous penalties or will be forced to file for bankruptcy if the transaction is not approved.

## Corporate Reorganization/Debt Restructuring/Prepackaged Bankruptcy Plans/Reverse Leveraged Buyouts/Wrap Plans

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to increase common and/or preferred shares and to issue shares as part of a debt restructuring plan, after evaluating:

- › Dilution to existing shareholders' positions;
- › Terms of the offer - discount/premium in purchase price to investor, including any fairness opinion; termination penalties; exit strategy;
- › Financial issues - company's financial situation; degree of need for capital; use of proceeds; effect of the financing on the company's cost of capital;
- › Management's efforts to pursue other alternatives;
- › Control issues - change in management; change in control, guaranteed board and committee seats; standstill provisions; voting agreements; veto power over certain corporate actions; and
- › Conflict of interest - arm's length transaction, managerial incentives.

Vote for the debt restructuring if it is expected that the company will file for bankruptcy if the transaction is not approved.

## Formation of Holding Company

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals regarding the formation of a holding company, taking into consideration the following:

- › The reasons for the change;
- › Any financial or tax benefits;
- › Regulatory benefits;
- › Increases in capital structure; and
- › Changes to the articles of incorporation or bylaws of the company.

Absent compelling financial reasons to recommend for the transaction, vote against the formation of a holding company if the transaction would include either of the following:

- › Increases in common or preferred stock in excess of the allowable maximum (see discussion under "Capital"); or
- › Adverse changes in shareholder rights.

## Going Private and Going Dark Transactions (LBOs and Minority Squeeze-outs)

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on going private transactions, taking into account the following:

- › Offer price/premium;
- › Fairness opinion;
- › How the deal was negotiated;
- › Conflicts of interest;
- › Other alternatives/offers considered; and
- › Non-completion risk.

Vote case-by-case on going dark transactions, determining whether the transaction enhances shareholder value by taking into consideration:

- › Whether the company has attained benefits from being publicly-traded (examination of trading volume, liquidity, and market research of the stock);

- › Balanced interests of continuing vs. cashed-out shareholders, taking into account the following:
  - › Are all shareholders able to participate in the transaction?
  - › Will there be a liquid market for remaining shareholders following the transaction?
  - › Does the company have strong corporate governance?
  - › Will insiders reap the gains of control following the proposed transaction?
  - › Does the state of incorporation have laws requiring continued reporting that may benefit shareholders?

## Joint Ventures

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to form joint ventures, taking into account the following:

- › Percentage of assets/business contributed;
- › Percentage ownership;
- › Financial and strategic benefits;
- › Governance structure;
- › Conflicts of interest;
- › Other alternatives; and
- › Non-completion risk.

## Liquidations

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on liquidations, taking into account the following:

- › Management's efforts to pursue other alternatives;
- › Appraisal value of assets; and
- › The compensation plan for executives managing the liquidation.

Vote for the liquidation if the company will file for bankruptcy if the proposal is not approved.

## Mergers and Acquisitions

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on mergers and acquisitions. Review and evaluate the merits and drawbacks of the proposed transaction, balancing various and sometimes countervailing factors including:

- › *Valuation* - Is the value to be received by the target shareholders (or paid by the acquirer) reasonable? While the fairness opinion may provide an initial starting point for assessing valuation reasonableness, emphasis is placed on the offer premium, market reaction, and strategic rationale.
- › *Market reaction* - How has the market responded to the proposed deal? A negative market reaction should cause closer scrutiny of a deal.
- › *Strategic rationale* - Does the deal make sense strategically? From where is the value derived? Cost and revenue synergies should not be overly aggressive or optimistic, but reasonably achievable. Management should also have a favorable track record of successful integration of historical acquisitions.
- › *Negotiations and process* - Were the terms of the transaction negotiated at arm's-length? Was the process fair and equitable? A fair process helps to ensure the best price for shareholders. Significant negotiation "wins" can also signify the deal makers' competency. The comprehensiveness of the sales process (e.g., full auction, partial auction, no auction) can also affect shareholder value.
- › *Conflicts of interest* - Are insiders benefiting from the transaction disproportionately and inappropriately as compared to non-insider shareholders? As the result of potential conflicts, the directors and officers of the company may be more likely to vote to approve a merger than if they did not hold these interests. Consider whether these interests may have influenced these directors and officers to support or recommend the merger. The CIC figure presented in the "ISS Transaction Summary" section of this report is an aggregate figure that can in

certain cases be a misleading indicator of the true value transfer from shareholders to insiders. Where such figure appears to be excessive, analyze the underlying assumptions to determine whether a potential conflict exists.

- › *Governance* - Will the combined company have a better or worse governance profile than the current governance profiles of the respective parties to the transaction? If the governance profile is to change for the worse, the burden is on the company to prove that other issues (such as valuation) outweigh any deterioration in governance.

## Private Placements/Warrants/Convertible Debentures



**General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals regarding private placements, warrants, and convertible debentures taking into consideration:

- › Dilution to existing shareholders' position: The amount and timing of shareholder ownership dilution should be weighed against the needs and proposed shareholder benefits of the capital infusion. Although newly issued common stock, absent preemptive rights, is typically dilutive to existing shareholders, share price appreciation is often the necessary event to trigger the exercise of "out of the money" warrants and convertible debt. In these instances from a value standpoint, the negative impact of dilution is mitigated by the increase in the company's stock price that must occur to trigger the dilutive event.
- › Terms of the offer (discount/premium in purchase price to investor, including any fairness opinion, conversion features, termination penalties, exit strategy):
  - › The terms of the offer should be weighed against the alternatives of the company and in light of company's financial condition. Ideally, the conversion price for convertible debt and the exercise price for warrants should be at a premium to the then prevailing stock price at the time of private placement.
  - › When evaluating the magnitude of a private placement discount or premium, consider factors that influence the discount or premium, such as, liquidity, due diligence costs, control and monitoring costs, capital scarcity, information asymmetry, and anticipation of future performance.
- › Financial issues:
  - › The company's financial condition;
  - › Degree of need for capital;
  - › Use of proceeds;
  - › Effect of the financing on the company's cost of capital;
  - › Current and proposed cash burn rate;
  - › Going concern viability and the state of the capital and credit markets.
- › Management's efforts to pursue alternatives and whether the company engaged in a process to evaluate alternatives: A fair, unconstrained process helps to ensure the best price for shareholders. Financing alternatives can include joint ventures, partnership, merger, or sale of part or all of the company.
- › Control issues:
  - › Change in management;
  - › Change in control;
  - › Guaranteed board and committee seats;
  - › Standstill provisions;
  - › Voting agreements;
  - › Veto power over certain corporate actions; and
  - › Minority versus majority ownership and corresponding minority discount or majority control premium.
- › Conflicts of interest:
  - › Conflicts of interest should be viewed from the perspective of the company and the investor.

- › Were the terms of the transaction negotiated at arm's length? Are managerial incentives aligned with shareholder interests?
- › Market reaction:
  - › The market's response to the proposed deal. A negative market reaction is a cause for concern. Market reaction may be addressed by analyzing the one day impact on the unaffected stock price.

Vote for the private placement, or for the issuance of warrants and/or convertible debentures in a private placement, if it is expected that the company will file for bankruptcy if the transaction is not approved.

### Reorganization/Restructuring Plan (Bankruptcy)

 **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to common shareholders on bankruptcy plans of reorganization, considering the following factors including, but not limited to:

- › Estimated value and financial prospects of the reorganized company;
- › Percentage ownership of current shareholders in the reorganized company;
- › Whether shareholders are adequately represented in the reorganization process (particularly through the existence of an Official Equity Committee);
- › The cause(s) of the bankruptcy filing, and the extent to which the plan of reorganization addresses the cause(s);
- › Existence of a superior alternative to the plan of reorganization; and
- › Governance of the reorganized company.

### Special Purpose Acquisition Corporations (SPACs)

 **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on SPAC mergers and acquisitions taking into account the following:

- › *Valuation* - Is the value being paid by the SPAC reasonable? SPACs generally lack an independent fairness opinion and the financials on the target may be limited. Compare the conversion price with the intrinsic value of the target company provided in the fairness opinion. Also, evaluate the proportionate value of the combined entity attributable to the SPAC IPO shareholders versus the pre-merger value of SPAC. Additionally, a private company discount may be applied to the target, if it is a private entity.
- › *Market reaction* - How has the market responded to the proposed deal? A negative market reaction may be a cause for concern. Market reaction may be addressed by analyzing the one-day impact on the unaffected stock price.
- › *Deal timing* - A main driver for most transactions is that the SPAC charter typically requires the deal to be complete within 18 to 24 months, or the SPAC is to be liquidated. Evaluate the valuation, market reaction, and potential conflicts of interest for deals that are announced close to the liquidation date.
- › *Negotiations and process* - What was the process undertaken to identify potential target companies within specified industry or location specified in charter? Consider the background of the sponsors.
- › *Conflicts of interest* - How are sponsors benefiting from the transaction compared to IPO shareholders? Potential conflicts could arise if a fairness opinion is issued by the insiders to qualify the deal rather than a third party or if management is encouraged to pay a higher price for the target because of an 80 percent rule (the charter requires that the fair market value of the target is at least equal to 80 percent of net assets of the SPAC). Also, there may be sense of urgency by the management team of the SPAC to close the deal since its charter typically requires a transaction to be completed within the 18-24 month timeframe.
- › *Voting agreements* - Are the sponsors entering into any voting agreements/tender offers with shareholders who are likely to vote against the proposed merger or exercise conversion rights?
- › *Governance* - What is the impact of having the SPAC CEO or founder on key committees following the proposed merger?

## Special Purpose Acquisition Corporations (SPACs) - Proposals for Extensions

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on SPAC extension proposals taking into account the length of the requested extension, the status of any pending transaction(s) or progression of the acquisition process, any added incentive for non-redeeming shareholders, and any prior extension requests.
- › *Length of request:* Typically, extension requests range from two to six months, depending on the progression of the SPAC's acquisition process.
  - › *Pending transaction(s) or progression of the acquisition process:* Sometimes an initial business combination was already put to a shareholder vote, but, for varying reasons, the transaction could not be consummated by the termination date and the SPAC is requesting an extension. Other times, the SPAC has entered into a definitive transaction agreement, but needs additional time to consummate or hold the shareholder meeting.
  - › *Added incentive for non-redeeming shareholders:* Sometimes the SPAC sponsor (or other insiders) will contribute, typically as a loan to the company, additional funds that will be added to the redemption value of each public share as long as such shares are not redeemed in connection with the extension request. The purpose of the "equity kicker" is to incentivize shareholders to hold their shares through the end of the requested extension or until the time the transaction is put to a shareholder vote, rather than electing redemption at the extension proposal meeting.
  - › *Prior extension requests:* Some SPACs request additional time beyond the extension period sought in prior extension requests.

## Spin-offs

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on spin-offs, considering:
- › Tax and regulatory advantages;
  - › Planned use of the sale proceeds;
  - › Valuation of spinoff;
  - › Fairness opinion;
  - › Benefits to the parent company;
  - › Conflicts of interest;
  - › Managerial incentives;
  - › Corporate governance changes;
  - › Changes in the capital structure.

## Value Maximization Shareholder Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on shareholder proposals seeking to maximize shareholder value by:
- › Hiring a financial advisor to explore strategic alternatives;
  - › Selling the company; or
  - › Liquidating the company and distributing the proceeds to shareholders.

These proposals should be evaluated based on the following factors:

- › Prolonged poor performance with no turnaround in sight;
- › Signs of entrenched board and management (such as the adoption of takeover defenses);
- › Strategic plan in place for improving value;
- › Likelihood of receiving reasonable value in a sale or dissolution; and
- › The company actively exploring its strategic options, including retaining a financial advisor.

## 5. COMPENSATION

### Executive Pay Evaluation

Underlying all evaluations are five global principles that most investors expect corporations to adhere to in designing and administering executive and director compensation programs:

1. Maintain appropriate pay-for-performance alignment, with emphasis on long-term shareholder value: This principle encompasses overall executive pay practices, which must be designed to attract, retain, and appropriately motivate the key employees who drive shareholder value creation over the long term. It will take into consideration, among other factors, the link between pay and performance; the mix between fixed and variable pay; performance goals; and equity-based plan costs;
2. Avoid arrangements that risk “pay for failure”: This principle addresses the appropriateness of long or indefinite contracts, excessive severance packages, and guaranteed compensation;
3. Maintain an independent and effective compensation committee: This principle promotes oversight of executive pay programs by directors with appropriate skills, knowledge, experience, and a sound process for compensation decision-making (*e.g.*, including access to independent expertise and advice when needed);
4. Provide shareholders with clear, comprehensive compensation disclosures: This principle underscores the importance of informative and timely disclosures that enable shareholders to evaluate executive pay practices fully and fairly;
5. Avoid inappropriate pay to non-executive directors: This principle recognizes the interests of shareholders in ensuring that compensation to outside directors is reasonable and does not compromise their independence and ability to make appropriate judgments in overseeing managers’ pay and performance. At the market level, it may incorporate a variety of generally accepted best practices.

### Advisory Votes on Executive Compensation—Management Proposals (Management Say-on-Pay)

 **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on ballot items related to executive pay and practices, as well as certain aspects of outside director compensation.

Vote against Advisory Votes on Executive Compensation (Say-on-Pay or “SOP”) if:

- › There is an unmitigated misalignment between CEO pay and company performance ([pay for performance](#));
- › The company maintains significant [problematic pay practices](#);
- › The board exhibits a significant level of [poor communication and responsiveness](#) to shareholders.

Vote against or withhold from the members of the Compensation Committee and potentially the full board if:

- › There is no SOP on the ballot, and an against vote on an SOP would otherwise be warranted due to pay-for-performance misalignment, problematic pay practices, or the lack of adequate responsiveness on compensation issues raised previously, or a combination thereof;
- › The board fails to respond adequately to a previous SOP proposal that received less than 70 percent support of votes cast;
- › The company has recently practiced or approved problematic pay practices, such as option repricing or option backdating; or
- › The situation is egregious.

## Primary Evaluation Factors for Executive Pay

### Pay-for-Performance Evaluation

ISS annually conducts a pay-for-performance analysis to identify strong or satisfactory alignment between pay and performance over a sustained period. With respect to companies in the S&P1500, Russell 3000, or Russell 3000E Indices<sup>9</sup>, this analysis considers the following:

1. Peer Group<sup>10</sup> Alignment:
  - › The degree of alignment between the company's annualized TSR rank and the CEO's annualized total pay rank within a peer group, each measured over a three-year period.
  - › The rankings of CEO total pay and company financial performance within a peer group, each measured over a three-year period.
  - › The multiple of the CEO's total pay relative to the peer group median in the most recent fiscal year.
2. Absolute Alignment<sup>11</sup> – the absolute alignment between the trend in CEO pay and company TSR over the prior five fiscal years – i.e., the difference between the trend in annual pay changes and the trend in annualized TSR during the period.

If the above analysis demonstrates significant unsatisfactory long-term pay-for-performance alignment or, in the case of companies outside the Russell indices, misaligned pay and performance are otherwise suggested, our analysis may include any of the following qualitative factors, as relevant to evaluating how various pay elements may work to encourage or to undermine long-term value creation and alignment with shareholder interests:

- › The ratio of performance- to time-based incentive awards;
- › The overall ratio of performance-based compensation;
- › The completeness of disclosure and rigor of performance goals;
- › The company's peer group benchmarking practices;
- › Actual results of financial/operational metrics, both absolute and relative to peers;
- › Special circumstances related to, for example, a new CEO in the prior FY or anomalous equity grant practices (e.g., bi-annual awards);
- › Realizable pay<sup>12</sup> compared to grant pay; and
- › Any other factors deemed relevant.

### Problematic Pay Practices

The focus is on executive compensation practices that contravene the global pay principles, including:

- › Problematic practices related to non-performance-based compensation elements;
- › Incentives that may motivate excessive risk-taking or present a windfall risk; and
- › Pay decisions that circumvent pay-for-performance, such as options backdating or waiving performance requirements.

---

<sup>9</sup> The [Russell 3000E](#) Index includes approximately 4,000 of the largest U.S. equity securities.

<sup>10</sup> The revised peer group is generally comprised of 14-24 companies that are selected using market cap, revenue (or assets for certain financial firms), GICS industry group, and company's selected peers' GICS industry group, with size constraints, via a process designed to select peers that are comparable to the subject company in terms of revenue/assets and industry, and also within a market-cap bucket that is reflective of the company's. For Oil, Gas & Consumable Fuels companies, market cap is the only size determinant.

<sup>11</sup> Only Russell 3000 Index companies are subject to the Absolute Alignment analysis.

<sup>12</sup> ISS research reports include realizable pay for S&P1500 companies.

### Problematic Pay Practices related to Non-Performance-Based Compensation Elements

Pay elements that are not directly based on performance are generally evaluated case-by-case considering the context of a company's overall pay program and demonstrated pay-for-performance philosophy. Please refer to ISS' [U.S. Compensation Policies FAQ](#) document for detail on specific pay practices that have been identified as potentially problematic and may lead to negative recommendations if they are deemed to be inappropriate or unjustified relative to executive pay best practices. The list below highlights the problematic practices that carry significant weight in this overall consideration and may result in adverse vote recommendations:

- › Repricing or replacing of underwater stock options/SARS without prior shareholder approval (including cash buyouts and voluntary surrender of underwater options);
- › Extraordinary perquisites or tax gross-ups;
- › New or materially amended agreements that provide for:
  - › Excessive termination or CIC severance payments (generally exceeding 3 times base salary and average/target/most recent bonus);
  - › CIC severance payments without involuntary job loss or substantial diminution of duties ("single" or "modified single" triggers) or in connection with a problematic Good Reason definition;
  - › CIC excise tax gross-up entitlements (including "modified" gross-ups);
  - › Multi-year guaranteed awards that are not at risk due to rigorous performance conditions;
  - › Liberal CIC definition combined with any single-trigger CIC benefits;
- › Insufficient executive compensation disclosure by externally-managed issuers (EMIs) such that a reasonable assessment of pay programs and practices applicable to the EMI's executives is not possible;
- › Any other provision or practice deemed to be egregious and present a significant risk to investors.

### Options Backdating

The following factors should be examined case-by-case to allow for distinctions to be made between “sloppy” plan administration versus deliberate action or fraud:

- › Reason and motive for the options backdating issue, such as inadvertent vs. deliberate grant date changes;
- › Duration of options backdating;
- › Size of restatement due to options backdating;
- › Corrective actions taken by the board or compensation committee, such as canceling or re-pricing backdated options, the recouping of option gains on backdated grants; and
- › Adoption of a grant policy that prohibits backdating, and creates a fixed grant schedule or window period for equity grants in the future.

### Compensation Committee Communications and Responsiveness

Consider the following factors case-by-case when evaluating ballot items related to executive pay on the board's responsiveness to investor input and engagement on compensation issues:

- › Failure to respond to majority-supported shareholder proposals on executive pay topics; or
- › Failure to adequately respond to the company's previous say-on-pay proposal that received the support of less than 70 percent of votes cast, taking into account:
  - › The company's response, including:
    - › Disclosure of engagement efforts with major institutional investors, including the frequency and timing of engagements and the company participants (including whether independent directors participated);

- › Disclosure of the specific concerns voiced by dissenting shareholders that led to the say-on-pay opposition;
- › Disclosure of specific and meaningful actions taken to address shareholders' concerns;
- › Other recent compensation actions taken by the company;
- › Whether the issues raised are recurring or isolated;
- › The company's ownership structure; and
- › Whether the support level was less than 50 percent, which would warrant the highest degree of responsiveness.

### Frequency of Advisory Vote on Executive Compensation ("Say When on Pay")

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for annual advisory votes on compensation, which provide the most consistent and clear communication channel for shareholder concerns about companies' executive pay programs.

### Voting on Golden Parachutes in an Acquisition, Merger, Consolidation, or Proposed Sale

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on say on Golden Parachute proposals, including consideration of existing change-in-control arrangements maintained with named executive officers rather than focusing primarily on new or extended arrangements.

Features that may result in an "against" recommendation include one or more of the following, depending on the number, magnitude, and/or timing of issue(s):

- › Single- or modified-single-trigger cash severance;
- › Single-trigger acceleration of unvested equity awards;
- › Full acceleration of equity awards granted shortly before the change in control;
- › Acceleration of performance awards above the target level of performance without compelling rationale;
- › Excessive cash severance (generally >3x base salary and bonus);
- › Excise tax gross-ups triggered and payable;
- › Excessive golden parachute payments (on an absolute basis or as a percentage of transaction equity value); or
- › Recent amendments that incorporate any problematic features (such as those above) or recent actions (such as extraordinary equity grants) that may make packages so attractive as to influence merger agreements that may not be in the best interests of shareholders; or
- › The company's assertion that a proposed transaction is conditioned on shareholder approval of the golden parachute advisory vote.

Recent amendment(s) that incorporate problematic features will tend to carry more weight on the overall analysis. However, the presence of multiple legacy problematic features will also be closely scrutinized.

In cases where the golden parachute vote is incorporated into a company's advisory vote on compensation (management say-on-pay), ISS will evaluate the say-on-pay proposal in accordance with these guidelines, which may give higher weight to that component of the overall evaluation.

## Equity-Based and Other Incentive Plans

Please refer to ISS' [U.S. Equity Compensation Plans FAQ](#) document for additional details on the Equity Plan Scorecard policy.

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on certain equity-based compensation plans<sup>13</sup> depending on a combination of certain plan features and equity grant practices, where positive factors may counterbalance negative factors, and vice versa, as evaluated using an "Equity Plan Scorecard" (EPSC) approach with three pillars:
- › **Plan Cost:** The total estimated cost of the company's equity plans relative to industry/market cap peers, measured by the company's estimated Shareholder Value Transfer (SVT) in relation to peers and considering both:
    - › SVT based on new shares requested plus shares remaining for future grants, plus outstanding unvested/unexercised grants; and
    - › SVT based only on new shares requested plus shares remaining for future grants.
  - › **Plan Features:**
    - › Quality of disclosure around vesting upon a change in control (CIC);
    - › Discretionary vesting authority;
    - › Liberal share recycling on various award types;
    - › Lack of minimum vesting period for grants made under the plan;
    - › Dividends payable prior to award vesting.
  - › **Grant Practices:**
    - › The company's three-year burn rate relative to its industry/market cap peers;
    - › Vesting requirements in CEO's recent equity grants (3-year look-back);
    - › The estimated duration of the plan (based on the sum of shares remaining available and the new shares requested, divided by the average annual shares granted in the prior three years);
    - › The proportion of the CEO's most recent equity grants/awards subject to performance conditions;
    - › Whether the company maintains a sufficient claw-back policy;
    - › Whether the company maintains sufficient post-exercise/vesting share-holding requirements.

Generally vote against the plan proposal if the combination of above factors indicates that the plan is not, overall, in shareholders' interests, or if any of the following egregious factors ("overriding factors") apply:

- › Awards may vest in connection with a liberal change-of-control definition;
- › The plan would permit repricing or cash buyout of underwater options without shareholder approval (either by expressly permitting it – for NYSE and Nasdaq listed companies – or by not prohibiting it when the company has a history of repricing – for non-listed companies);
- › The plan is a vehicle for problematic pay practices or a significant pay-for-performance disconnect under certain circumstances;
- › The plan is excessively dilutive to shareholders' holdings; or
- › Any other plan features are determined to have a significant negative impact on shareholder interests.

### Further Information on certain EPSC Factors:

---

<sup>13</sup> Proposals evaluated under the EPSC policy generally include those to approve or amend (1) stock option plans for employees and/or employees and directors, (2) restricted stock plans for employees and/or employees and directors, and (3) omnibus stock incentive plans for employees and/or employees and directors; amended plans will be further evaluated case-by-case.

## Shareholder Value Transfer (SVT)

The cost of the equity plans is expressed as Shareholder Value Transfer (SVT), which is measured using a binomial option pricing model that assesses the amount of shareholders' equity flowing out of the company to employees and directors. SVT is expressed as both a dollar amount and as a percentage of market value, and includes the new shares proposed, shares available under existing plans, and shares granted but unexercised (using two measures, in the case of plans subject to the Equity Plan Scorecard evaluation, as noted above). All award types are valued. For omnibus plans, unless limitations are placed on the most expensive types of awards (for example, full-value awards), the assumption is made that all awards to be granted will be the most expensive types. See discussion of specific types of awards.

Except for proposals subject to Equity Plan Scorecard evaluation, Shareholder Value Transfer is reasonable if it falls below a company-specific benchmark. The benchmark is determined as follows: The top quartile performers in each industry group (using the Global Industry Classification Standard: GICS) are identified. Benchmark SVT levels for each industry are established based on these top performers' historic SVT. Regression analyses are run on each industry group to identify the variables most strongly correlated to SVT. The benchmark industry SVT level is then adjusted upwards or downwards for the specific company by plugging the company-specific performance measures, size and cash compensation into the industry cap equations to arrive at the company's benchmark.<sup>14</sup>

## Three-Year Burn Rate

Burn-rate benchmarks (utilized in Equity Plan Scorecard evaluations) are calculated as the greater of: (1) the mean ( $\mu$ ) plus one standard deviation ( $\sigma$ ) of the company's GICS group segmented by S&P 500, Russell 3000 index (less the S&P500), and non-Russell 3000 index; and (2) two percent of weighted common shares outstanding. In addition, year-over-year burn-rate benchmark changes will be limited to a maximum of two (2) percentage points plus or minus the prior year's burn-rate benchmark. See the [U.S. Equity Compensation Plans FAQ](#) for the benchmarks.

## Egregious Factors

### Liberal Change in Control Definition

Generally vote against equity plans if the plan has a liberal definition of change in control and the equity awards could vest upon such liberal definition of change in control, even though an actual change in control may not occur. Examples of such a definition include, but are not limited to, announcement or commencement of a tender offer, provisions for acceleration upon a "potential" takeover, shareholder approval of a merger or other transactions, or similar language.

### Repricing Provisions

Vote against plans that expressly permit the repricing or exchange of underwater stock options/stock appreciate rights (SARs) without prior shareholder approval. "Repricing" typically includes the ability to do any of the following:

- › Amend the terms of outstanding options or SARs to reduce the exercise price of such outstanding options or SARs;
- › Cancel outstanding options or SARs in exchange for options or SARs with an exercise price that is less than the exercise price of the original options or SARs;
- › The cancellation of underwater options in exchange for stock awards; or
- › Cash buyouts of underwater options.

While the above cover most types of repricing, ISS may view other provisions as akin to repricing depending on the facts and circumstances.

---

<sup>14</sup> For plans evaluated under the Equity Plan Scorecard policy, the company's SVT benchmark is considered along with other factors.

Also, vote against or withhold from members of the Compensation Committee who approved repricing (as defined above or otherwise determined by ISS), without prior shareholder approval, even if such repricings are allowed in their equity plan.

Vote against plans that do not expressly prohibit repricing or cash buyout of underwater options without shareholder approval if the company has a history of repricing/buyouts without shareholder approval, and the applicable listing standards would not preclude them from doing so.

### **Problematic Pay Practices or Significant Pay-for-Performance Disconnect**

If the equity plan on the ballot is a vehicle for [problematic pay practices](#), vote against the plan.

ISS may recommend a vote against the equity plan if the plan is determined to be a vehicle for pay-for-performance misalignment. Considerations in voting against the equity plan may include, but are not limited to:

- › Severity of the pay-for-performance misalignment;
- › Whether problematic equity grant practices are driving the misalignment; and/or
- › Whether equity plan awards have been heavily concentrated to the CEO and/or the other NEOs.

### **Amending Cash and Equity Plans (including Approval for Tax Deductibility (162(m)))**



**General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on amendments to cash and equity incentive plans.

Generally vote for proposals to amend executive cash, stock, or cash and stock incentive plans if the proposal:

- › Addresses administrative features only; or
- › Seeks approval for Section 162(m) purposes only, and the plan administering committee consists entirely of independent directors, per [ISS' Classification of Directors](#). Note that if the company is presenting the plan to shareholders for the first time for any reason (including after the company's initial public offering), or if the proposal is bundled with other material plan amendments, then the recommendation will be case-by-case (see below).

Vote against proposals to amend executive cash, stock, or cash and stock incentive plans if the proposal:

- › Seeks approval for Section 162(m) purposes only, and the plan administering committee does not consist entirely of independent directors, per [ISS' Classification of Directors](#).

Vote case-by-case on all other proposals to amend cash incentive plans. This includes plans presented to shareholders for the first time after the company's IPO and/or proposals that bundle material amendment(s) other than those for Section 162(m) purposes.

Vote case-by-case on all other proposals to amend equity incentive plans, considering the following:

- › If the proposal requests additional shares and/or the amendments include a term extension or addition of full value awards as an award type, the recommendation will be based on the Equity Plan Scorecard evaluation as well as an analysis of the overall impact of the amendments.
- › If the plan is being presented to shareholders for the first time (including after the company's IPO), whether or not additional shares are being requested, the recommendation will be based on the Equity Plan Scorecard evaluation as well as an analysis of the overall impact of any amendments.
- › If there is no request for additional shares and the amendments do not include a term extension or addition of full value awards as an award type, then the recommendation will be based entirely on an analysis of the overall impact of the amendments, and the EPSC evaluation will be shown only for informational purposes.

In the first two case-by-case evaluation scenarios, the EPSC evaluation/score is the more heavily weighted consideration.

## Specific Treatment of Certain Award Types in Equity Plan Evaluations

### Dividend Equivalent Rights

Options that have Dividend Equivalent Rights (DERs) associated with them will have a higher calculated award value than those without DERs under the binomial model, based on the value of these dividend streams. The higher value will be applied to new shares, shares available under existing plans, and shares awarded but not exercised per the plan specifications. DERs transfer more shareholder equity to employees and non-employee directors and this cost should be captured.

### Operating Partnership (OP) Units in Equity Plan Analysis of Real Estate Investment Trusts (REITs)

For Real Estate Investment Trusts (REITs), include the common shares issuable upon conversion of outstanding Operating Partnership (OP) units in the share count for the purposes of determining: (1) market capitalization in the Shareholder Value Transfer (SVT) analysis and (2) shares outstanding in the burn rate analysis.

## Other Compensation Plans

### 401(k) Employee Benefit Plans

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to implement a 401(k) savings plan for employees.

### Employee Stock Ownership Plans (ESOPs)

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to implement an ESOP or increase authorized shares for existing ESOPs, unless the number of shares allocated to the ESOP is excessive (more than five percent of outstanding shares).

### Employee Stock Purchase Plans—Qualified Plans

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on qualified employee stock purchase plans. Vote for employee stock purchase plans where all of the following apply:
  - › Purchase price is at least 85 percent of fair market value;
  - › Offering period is 27 months or less; and
  - › The number of shares allocated to the plan is 10 percent or less of the outstanding shares.

Vote against qualified employee stock purchase plans where any of the following apply:

- › Purchase price is less than 85 percent of fair market value; or
- › Offering period is greater than 27 months; or
- › The number of shares allocated to the plan is more than 10 percent of the outstanding shares.

### Employee Stock Purchase Plans—Non-Qualified Plans

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on nonqualified employee stock purchase plans. Vote for nonqualified employee stock purchase plans with all the following features:

- › Broad-based participation (*i.e.*, all employees of the company with the exclusion of individuals with 5 percent or more of beneficial ownership of the company);
- › Limits on employee contribution, which may be a fixed dollar amount or expressed as a percent of base salary;
- › Company matching contribution up to 25 percent of employee's contribution, which is effectively a discount of 20 percent from market value; and
- › No discount on the stock price on the date of purchase when there is a company matching contribution.

Vote against nonqualified employee stock purchase plans when the plan features do not meet all of the above criteria. If the matching contribution or effective discount exceeds the above, ISS may evaluate the SVT cost of the plan as part of the assessment.

### Option Exchange Programs/Repricing Options

 **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on management proposals seeking approval to exchange/reprice options taking into consideration:

- › Historic trading patterns--the stock price should not be so volatile that the options are likely to be back "in-the-money" over the near term;
- › Rationale for the re-pricing--was the stock price decline beyond management's control?;
- › Is this a value-for-value exchange?;
- › Are surrendered stock options added back to the plan reserve?;
- › Timing--repricing should occur at least one year out from any precipitous drop in company's stock price;
- › Option vesting--does the new option vest immediately or is there a black-out period?;
- › Term of the option--the term should remain the same as that of the replaced option;
- › Exercise price--should be set at fair market or a premium to market;
- › Participants--executive officers and directors must be excluded.

If the surrendered options are added back to the equity plans for re-issuance, then also take into consideration the company's total cost of equity plans and its three-year average burn rate.

In addition to the above considerations, evaluate the intent, rationale, and timing of the repricing proposal. The proposal should clearly articulate why the board is choosing to conduct an exchange program at this point in time. Repricing underwater options after a recent precipitous drop in the company's stock price demonstrates poor timing and warrants additional scrutiny. Also, consider the terms of the surrendered options, such as the grant date, exercise price and vesting schedule. Grant dates of surrendered options should be far enough back (two to three years) so as not to suggest that repricings are being done to take advantage of short-term downward price movements. Similarly, the exercise price of surrendered options should be above the 52-week high for the stock price.

Vote for shareholder proposals to put option repricings to a shareholder vote.

### Stock Plans in Lieu of Cash

 **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on plans that provide participants with the option of taking all or a portion of their cash compensation in the form of stock.

Vote for non-employee director-only equity plans that provide a dollar-for-dollar cash-for-stock exchange.

Vote case-by-case on plans which do not provide a dollar-for-dollar cash for stock exchange. In cases where the exchange is not dollar-for-dollar, the request for new or additional shares for such equity program will be considered

using the binomial option pricing model. In an effort to capture the total cost of total compensation, ISS will not make any adjustments to carve out the in-lieu-of cash compensation.

### Transfer Stock Option (TSO) Programs

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** One-time Transfers: Vote against or withhold from compensation committee members if they fail to submit one-time transfers to shareholders for approval.

Vote case-by-case on one-time transfers. Vote for if:

- › Executive officers and non-employee directors are excluded from participating;
- › Stock options are purchased by third-party financial institutions at a discount to their fair value using option pricing models such as Black-Scholes or a Binomial Option Valuation or other appropriate financial models; and
- › There is a two-year minimum holding period for sale proceeds (cash or stock) for all participants.

Additionally, management should provide a clear explanation of why options are being transferred to a third-party institution and whether the events leading up to a decline in stock price were beyond management's control. A review of the company's historic stock price volatility should indicate if the options are likely to be back "in-the-money" over the near term.

Ongoing TSO program: Vote against equity plan proposals if the details of ongoing TSO programs are not provided to shareholders. Since TSOs will be one of the award types under a stock plan, the ongoing TSO program, structure and mechanics must be disclosed to shareholders. The specific criteria to be considered in evaluating these proposals include, but not limited, to the following:

- › Eligibility;
- › Vesting;
- › Bid-price;
- › Term of options;
- › Cost of the program and impact of the TSOs on company's total option expense; and
- › Option repricing policy.

Amendments to existing plans that allow for introduction of transferability of stock options should make clear that only options granted post-amendment shall be transferable.

## Director Compensation

### Shareholder Ratification of Director Pay Programs

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on management proposals seeking ratification of non-employee director compensation, based on the following factors:

- › If the equity plan under which non-employee director grants are made is on the ballot, whether or not it warrants support; and
- › An assessment of the following qualitative factors:
  - › The relative magnitude of director compensation as compared to companies of a similar profile;
  - › The presence of problematic pay practices relating to director compensation;
  - › Director stock ownership guidelines and holding requirements;
  - › Equity award vesting schedules;
  - › The mix of cash and equity-based compensation;
  - › Meaningful limits on director compensation;

- › The availability of retirement benefits or perquisites; and
- › The quality of disclosure surrounding director compensation.

## Equity Plans for Non-Employee Directors

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on compensation plans for non-employee directors, based on:

- › The total estimated cost of the company's equity plans relative to industry/market cap peers, measured by the company's estimated Shareholder Value Transfer (SVT) based on new shares requested plus shares remaining for future grants, plus outstanding unvested/unexercised grants;
- › The company's three-year burn rate relative to its industry/market cap peers (in certain circumstances); and
- › The presence of any egregious plan features (such as an option repricing provision or liberal CIC vesting risk).

On occasion, non-employee director stock plans will exceed the plan cost or burn-rate benchmarks when combined with employee or executive stock plans. In such cases, vote case-by-case on the plan taking into consideration the following qualitative factors:

- › The relative magnitude of director compensation as compared to companies of a similar profile;
- › The presence of problematic pay practices relating to director compensation;
- › Director stock ownership guidelines and holding requirements;
- › Equity award vesting schedules;
- › The mix of cash and equity-based compensation;
- › Meaningful limits on director compensation;
- › The availability of retirement benefits or perquisites; and
- › The quality of disclosure surrounding director compensation.

## Non-Employee Director Retirement Plans

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against retirement plans for non-employee directors. Vote for shareholder proposals to eliminate retirement plans for non-employee directors.

## Shareholder Proposals on Compensation

### Bonus Banking/Bonus Banking "Plus"

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals seeking deferral of a portion of annual bonus pay, with ultimate payout linked to sustained results for the performance metrics on which the bonus was earned (whether for the named executive officers or a wider group of employees), taking into account the following factors:

- › The company's past practices regarding equity and cash compensation;
- › Whether the company has a holding period or stock ownership requirements in place, such as a meaningful retention ratio (at least 50 percent for full tenure); and
- › Whether the company has a rigorous claw-back policy in place.

### Compensation Consultants—Disclosure of Board or Company's Utilization

▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for shareholder proposals seeking disclosure regarding the Company, Board, or Compensation Committee's use of compensation consultants, such as company name, business relationship(s), and fees paid.

## Disclosure/Setting Levels or Types of Compensation for Executives and Directors

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for shareholder proposals seeking additional disclosure of executive and director pay information, provided the information requested is relevant to shareholders' needs, would not put the company at a competitive disadvantage relative to its industry, and is not unduly burdensome to the company.

Generally vote against shareholder proposals seeking to set absolute levels on compensation or otherwise dictate the amount or form of compensation (such as types of compensation elements or specific metrics) to be used for executive or directors.

Generally vote against shareholder proposals that mandate a minimum amount of stock that directors must own in order to qualify as a director or to remain on the board.

Vote case-by-case on all other shareholder proposals regarding executive and director pay, taking into account relevant factors, including but not limited to: company performance, pay level and design versus peers, history of compensation concerns or pay-for-performance disconnect, and/or the scope and prescriptive nature of the proposal.

## Golden Coffins/Executive Death Benefits

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals calling for companies to adopt a policy of obtaining shareholder approval for any future agreements and corporate policies that could oblige the company to make payments or awards following the death of a senior executive in the form of unearned salary or bonuses, accelerated vesting or the continuation in force of unvested equity grants, perquisites and other payments or awards made in lieu of compensation. This would not apply to any benefit programs or equity plan proposals for which the broad-based employee population is eligible.

## Hold Equity Past Retirement or for a Significant Period of Time

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on shareholder proposals asking companies to adopt policies requiring senior executive officers to retain a portion of net shares acquired through compensation plans. The following factors will be taken into account:
- › The percentage/ratio of net shares required to be retained;
  - › The time period required to retain the shares;
  - › Whether the company has equity retention, holding period, and/or stock ownership requirements in place and the robustness of such requirements;
  - › Whether the company has any other policies aimed at mitigating risk taking by executives;
  - › Executives' actual stock ownership and the degree to which it meets or exceeds the proponent's suggested holding period/retention ratio or the company's existing requirements; and
  - › Problematic pay practices, current and past, which may demonstrate a short-term versus long-term focus.

## Non-Deductible Compensation

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals seeking disclosure of the extent to which the company paid non-deductible compensation to senior executives due to Internal Revenue Code Section 162(m), while considering the company's existing disclosure practices.

## Pay Disparity

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals calling for an analysis of the pay disparity between corporate executives and other non-executive employees. The following factors will be considered:

- › The company's current level of disclosure of its executive compensation setting process, including how the company considers pay disparity;
- › If any problematic pay practices or pay-for-performance concerns have been identified at the company; and
- › The level of shareholder support for the company's pay programs.

Generally vote against proposals calling for the company to use the pay disparity analysis or pay ratio in a specific way to set or limit executive pay.

### Pay for Performance/Performance-Based Awards

 **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on shareholder proposals requesting that a significant amount of future long-term incentive compensation awarded to senior executives shall be performance-based and requesting that the board adopt and disclose challenging performance metrics to shareholders, based on the following analytical steps:

- › First, vote for shareholder proposals advocating the use of performance-based equity awards, such as performance contingent options or restricted stock, indexed options or premium-priced options, unless the proposal is overly restrictive or if the company has demonstrated that it is using a "substantial" portion of performance-based awards for its top executives. Standard stock options and performance-accelerated awards do not meet the criteria to be considered as performance-based awards. Further, premium-priced options should have a meaningful premium to be considered performance-based awards.
- › Second, assess the rigor of the company's performance-based equity program. If the bar set for the performance-based program is too low based on the company's historical or peer group comparison, generally vote for the proposal. Furthermore, if target performance results in an above target payout, vote for the shareholder proposal due to program's poor design. If the company does not disclose the performance metric of the performance-based equity program, vote for the shareholder proposal regardless of the outcome of the first step to the test.

In general, vote for the shareholder proposal if the company does not meet both of the above two steps.

### Pay for Superior Performance

 **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on shareholder proposals that request the board establish a pay-for-superior performance standard in the company's executive compensation plan for senior executives. These proposals generally include the following principles:

- › Set compensation targets for the plan's annual and long-term incentive pay components at or below the peer group median;
- › Deliver a majority of the plan's target long-term compensation through performance-vested, not simply time-vested, equity awards;
- › Provide the strategic rationale and relative weightings of the financial and non-financial performance metrics or criteria used in the annual and performance-vested long-term incentive components of the plan;
- › Establish performance targets for each plan financial metric relative to the performance of the company's peer companies;
- › Limit payment under the annual and performance-vested long-term incentive components of the plan to when the company's performance on its selected financial performance metrics exceeds peer group median performance.

Consider the following factors in evaluating this proposal:

- › What aspects of the company's annual and long-term equity incentive programs are performance driven?
- › If the annual and long-term equity incentive programs are performance driven, are the performance criteria and hurdle rates disclosed to shareholders or are they benchmarked against a disclosed peer group?

- › Can shareholders assess the correlation between pay and performance based on the current disclosure?
- › What type of industry and stage of business cycle does the company belong to?

### Pre-Arranged Trading Plans (10b5-1 Plans)

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for shareholder proposals calling for certain principles regarding the use of prearranged trading plans (10b5-1 plans) for executives. These principles include:
  - › Adoption, amendment, or termination of a 10b5-1 Plan must be disclosed within two business days in a Form 8-K;
  - › Amendment or early termination of a 10b5-1 Plan is allowed only under extraordinary circumstances, as determined by the board;
  - › Ninety days must elapse between adoption or amendment of a 10b5-1 Plan and initial trading under the plan;
  - › Reports on Form 4 must identify transactions made pursuant to a 10b5-1 Plan;
  - › An executive may not trade in company stock outside the 10b5-1 Plan;
  - › Trades under a 10b5-1 Plan must be handled by a broker who does not handle other securities transactions for the executive.

### Prohibit Outside CEOs from Serving on Compensation Committees

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against proposals seeking a policy to prohibit any outside CEO from serving on a company's compensation committee, unless the company has demonstrated problematic pay practices that raise concerns about the performance and composition of the committee.

### Recoupment of Incentive or Stock Compensation in Specified Circumstances

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to recoup incentive cash or stock compensation made to senior executives if it is later determined that the figures upon which incentive compensation is earned turn out to have been in error, or if the senior executive has breached company policy or has engaged in misconduct that may be significantly detrimental to the company's financial position or reputation, or if the senior executive failed to manage or monitor risks that subsequently led to significant financial or reputational harm to the company. Many companies have adopted policies that permit recoupment in cases where an executive's fraud, misconduct, or negligence significantly contributed to a restatement of financial results that led to the awarding of unearned incentive compensation. However, such policies may be narrow given that not all misconduct or negligence may result in significant financial restatements. Misconduct, negligence or lack of sufficient oversight by senior executives may lead to significant financial loss or reputational damage that may have long-lasting impact.

In considering whether to support such shareholder proposals, ISS will take into consideration the following factors:

- › If the company has adopted a formal recoupment policy;
- › The rigor of the recoupment policy focusing on how and under what circumstances the company may recoup incentive or stock compensation;
- › Whether the company has chronic restatement history or material financial problems;
- › Whether the company's policy substantially addresses the concerns raised by the proponent;
- › Disclosure of recoupment of incentive or stock compensation from senior executives or lack thereof; or
- › Any other relevant factors.

### Severance Agreements for Executives/Golden Parachutes

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for shareholder proposals requiring that golden parachutes or executive severance agreements be submitted for shareholder ratification, unless the proposal requires shareholder approval *prior* to entering into employment contracts.

Vote case-by-case on proposals to ratify or cancel golden parachutes. An acceptable parachute should include, but is not limited to, the following:

- › The triggering mechanism should be beyond the control of management;
- › The amount should not exceed three times base amount (defined as the average annual taxable W-2 compensation during the five years prior to the year in which the change of control occurs);
- › Change-in-control payments should be double-triggered, i.e., (1) after a change in control has taken place, and (2) termination of the executive as a result of the change in control. Change in control is defined as a change in the company ownership structure.

## Share Buyback Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against shareholder proposals prohibiting executives from selling shares of company stock during periods in which the company has announced that it may or will be repurchasing shares of its stock. Vote for the proposal when there is a pattern of abuse by executives exercising options or selling shares during periods of share buybacks.

Vote case-by-case on proposals requesting the company exclude the impact of share buybacks from the calculation of incentive program metrics, considering the following factors:

- › The frequency and timing of the company's share buybacks;
- › The use of per-share metrics in incentive plans;
- › The effect of recent buybacks on incentive metric results and payouts; and
- › Whether there is any indication of metric result manipulation.

## Supplemental Executive Retirement Plans (SERPs)

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for shareholder proposals requesting to put extraordinary benefits contained in SERP agreements to a shareholder vote unless the company's executive pension plans do not contain excessive benefits beyond what is offered under employee-wide plans.

Generally vote for shareholder proposals requesting to limit the executive benefits provided under the company's supplemental executive retirement plan (SERP) by limiting covered compensation to a senior executive's annual salary or those pay elements covered for the general employee population.

## Tax Gross-Up Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals calling for companies to adopt a policy of not providing tax gross-up payments to executives, except in situations where gross-ups are provided pursuant to a plan, policy, or arrangement applicable to management employees of the company, such as a relocation or expatriate tax equalization policy.

## Termination of Employment Prior to Severance Payment/Eliminating Accelerated Vesting of Unvested Equity

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on shareholder proposals seeking a policy requiring termination of employment prior to severance payment and/or eliminating accelerated vesting of unvested equity.

The following factors will be considered:

- › The company's current treatment of equity upon employment termination and/or in change-in-control situations (i.e., vesting is double triggered and/or pro rata, does it allow for the assumption of equity by acquiring company, the treatment of performance shares, etc.);

- › Current employment agreements, including potential poor pay practices such as gross-ups embedded in those agreements.

Generally vote for proposals seeking a policy that prohibits automatic acceleration of the vesting of equity awards to senior executives upon a voluntary termination of employment or in the event of a change in control (except for pro rata vesting considering the time elapsed and attainment of any related performance goals between the award date and the change in control).

## 6. ROUTINE/MISCELLANEOUS

### Adjourn Meeting

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against proposals to provide management with the authority to adjourn an annual or special meeting absent compelling reasons to support the proposal.

Vote for proposals that relate specifically to soliciting votes for a merger or transaction if supporting that merger or transaction. Vote against proposals if the wording is too vague or if the proposal includes "other business."

### Amend Quorum Requirements

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals to reduce quorum requirements for shareholder meetings below a majority of the shares outstanding unless there are compelling reasons to support the proposal.

### Amend Minor Bylaws

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for bylaw or charter changes that are of a housekeeping nature (updates or corrections).

### Change Company Name

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals to change the corporate name unless there is compelling evidence that the change would adversely impact shareholder value.

### Change Date, Time, or Location of Annual Meeting

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for management proposals to change the date, time, or location of the annual meeting unless the proposed change is unreasonable.

Vote against shareholder proposals to change the date, time, or location of the annual meeting unless the current scheduling or location is unreasonable.

### Other Business

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals to approve other business when it appears as a voting item.

## 7. SOCIAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES

### Global Approach

Issues covered under the policy include a wide range of topics, including consumer and product safety, environment and energy, labor standards and human rights, workplace and board diversity, and corporate political issues. While a variety of factors goes into each analysis, the overall principle guiding all vote recommendations focuses on how the proposal may enhance or protect shareholder value in either the short or long term.

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote case-by-case, examining primarily whether implementation of the proposal is likely to enhance or protect shareholder value. The following factors will be considered:
- › If the issues presented in the proposal are more appropriately or effectively dealt with through legislation or government regulation;
  - › If the company has already responded in an appropriate and sufficient manner to the issue(s) raised in the proposal;
  - › Whether the proposal's request is unduly burdensome (scope or timeframe) or overly prescriptive;
  - › The company's approach compared with any industry standard practices for addressing the issue(s) raised by the proposal;
  - › Whether there are significant controversies, fines, penalties, or litigation associated with the company's environmental or social practices;
  - › If the proposal requests increased disclosure or greater transparency, whether reasonable and sufficient information is currently available to shareholders from the company or from other publicly available sources; and
  - › If the proposal requests increased disclosure or greater transparency, whether implementation would reveal proprietary or confidential information that could place the company at a competitive disadvantage.

### Endorsement of Principles

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against proposals seeking a company's endorsement of principles that support a particular public policy position. Endorsing a set of principles may require a company to take a stand on an issue that is beyond its own control and may limit its flexibility with respect to future developments. Management and the board should be afforded the flexibility to make decisions on specific public policy positions based on their own assessment of the most beneficial strategies for the company.

### Animal Welfare

#### Animal Welfare Policies

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals seeking a report on a company's animal welfare standards, or animal welfare-related risks, unless:
- › The company has already published a set of animal welfare standards and monitors compliance;
  - › The company's standards are comparable to industry peers; and
  - › There are no recent significant fines, litigation, or controversies related to the company's and/or its suppliers' treatment of animals.

## Animal Testing

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against proposals to phase out the use of animals in product testing, unless:
- › The company is conducting animal testing programs that are unnecessary or not required by regulation;
  - › The company is conducting animal testing when suitable alternatives are commonly accepted and used by industry peers; or
  - › There are recent, significant fines or litigation related to the company's treatment of animals.

## Animal Slaughter

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against proposals requesting the implementation of Controlled Atmosphere Killing (CAK) methods at company and/or supplier operations unless such methods are required by legislation or generally accepted as the industry standard.

Vote case-by-case on proposals requesting a report on the feasibility of implementing CAK methods at company and/or supplier operations considering the availability of existing research conducted by the company or industry groups on this topic and any fines or litigation related to current animal processing procedures at the company.

## Consumer Issues

### Genetically Modified Ingredients

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against proposals requesting that a company voluntarily label genetically engineered (GE) ingredients in its products. The labeling of products with GE ingredients is best left to the appropriate regulatory authorities.

Vote case-by-case on proposals asking for a report on the feasibility of labeling products containing GE ingredients, taking into account:

- › The potential impact of such labeling on the company's business;
- › The quality of the company's disclosure on GE product labeling, related voluntary initiatives, and how this disclosure compares with industry peer disclosure; and
- › Company's current disclosure on the feasibility of GE product labeling.

Generally vote against proposals seeking a report on the social, health, and environmental effects of genetically modified organisms (GMOs). Studies of this sort are better undertaken by regulators and the scientific community.

Generally vote against proposals to eliminate GE ingredients from the company's products, or proposals asking for reports outlining the steps necessary to eliminate GE ingredients from the company's products. Such decisions are more appropriately made by management with consideration of current regulations.

### Reports on Potentially Controversial Business/Financial Practices

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on requests for reports on a company's potentially controversial business or financial practices or products, taking into account:

- › Whether the company has adequately disclosed mechanisms in place to prevent abuses;
- › Whether the company has adequately disclosed the financial risks of the products/practices in question;

- › Whether the company has been subject to violations of related laws or serious controversies; and
- › Peer companies' policies/practices in this area.

### Pharmaceutical Pricing, Access to Medicines, and Prescription Drug Reimportation

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against proposals requesting that companies implement specific price restraints on pharmaceutical products unless the company fails to adhere to legislative guidelines or industry norms in its product pricing practices.

Vote case-by-case on proposals requesting that a company report on its product pricing or access to medicine policies, considering:

- › The potential for reputational, market, and regulatory risk exposure;
- › Existing disclosure of relevant policies;
- › Deviation from established industry norms;
- › Relevant company initiatives to provide research and/or products to disadvantaged consumers;
- › Whether the proposal focuses on specific products or geographic regions;
- › The potential burden and scope of the requested report;
- › Recent significant controversies, litigation, or fines at the company.

Generally vote for proposals requesting that a company report on the financial and legal impact of its prescription drug reimportation policies unless such information is already publicly disclosed.

Generally vote against proposals requesting that companies adopt specific policies to encourage or constrain prescription drug reimportation. Such matters are more appropriately the province of legislative activity and may place the company at a competitive disadvantage relative to its peers.

### Product Safety and Toxic/Hazardous Materials

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals requesting that a company report on its policies, initiatives/procedures, and oversight mechanisms related to toxic/hazardous materials or product safety in its supply chain, unless:
  - › The company already discloses similar information through existing reports such as a supplier code of conduct and/or a sustainability report;
  - › The company has formally committed to the implementation of a toxic/hazardous materials and/or product safety and supply chain reporting and monitoring program based on industry norms or similar standards within a specified time frame; and
  - › The company has not been recently involved in relevant significant controversies, fines, or litigation.

Vote case-by-case on resolutions requesting that companies develop a feasibility assessment to phase-out of certain toxic/hazardous materials, or evaluate and disclose the potential financial and legal risks associated with utilizing certain materials, considering:

- › The company's current level of disclosure regarding its product safety policies, initiatives, and oversight mechanisms;
- › Current regulations in the markets in which the company operates; and
- › Recent significant controversies, litigation, or fines stemming from toxic/hazardous materials at the company.

Generally vote against resolutions requiring that a company reformulate its products.

### Tobacco-Related Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on resolutions regarding the advertisement of tobacco products, considering:
- › Recent related fines, controversies, or significant litigation;
  - › Whether the company complies with relevant laws and regulations on the marketing of tobacco;
  - › Whether the company's advertising restrictions deviate from those of industry peers;
  - › Whether the company entered into the Master Settlement Agreement, which restricts marketing of tobacco to youth; and
  - › Whether restrictions on marketing to youth extend to foreign countries.

Vote case-by-case on proposals regarding second-hand smoke, considering;

- › Whether the company complies with all laws and regulations;
- › The degree that voluntary restrictions beyond those mandated by law might hurt the company's competitiveness; and
- › The risk of any health-related liabilities.

Generally vote against resolutions to cease production of tobacco-related products, to avoid selling products to tobacco companies, to spin-off tobacco-related businesses, or prohibit investment in tobacco equities. Such business decisions are better left to company management or portfolio managers.

Generally vote against proposals regarding tobacco product warnings. Such decisions are better left to public health authorities.

## Climate Change

### Climate Change/Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for resolutions requesting that a company disclose information on the financial, physical, or regulatory risks it faces related to climate change on its operations and investments or on how the company identifies, measures, and manages such risks, considering:
- › Whether the company already provides current, publicly-available information on the impact that climate change may have on the company as well as associated company policies and procedures to address related risks and/or opportunities;
  - › The company's level of disclosure compared to industry peers; and
  - › Whether there are significant controversies, fines, penalties, or litigation associated with the company's climate change-related performance.

Generally vote for proposals requesting a report on greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from company operations and/or products and operations, unless:

- › The company already discloses current, publicly-available information on the impacts that GHG emissions may have on the company as well as associated company policies and procedures to address related risks and/or opportunities;
- › The company's level of disclosure is comparable to that of industry peers; and
- › There are no significant, controversies, fines, penalties, or litigation associated with the company's GHG emissions.

Vote case-by-case on proposals that call for the adoption of GHG reduction goals from products and operations, taking into account:

- › Whether the company provides disclosure of year-over-year GHG emissions performance data;

- › Whether company disclosure lags behind industry peers;
- › The company's actual GHG emissions performance;
- › The company's current GHG emission policies, oversight mechanisms, and related initiatives; and
- › Whether the company has been the subject of recent, significant violations, fines, litigation, or controversy related to GHG emissions.

## Energy Efficiency

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals requesting that a company report on its energy efficiency policies, unless:
  - › The company complies with applicable energy efficiency regulations and laws, and discloses its participation in energy efficiency policies and programs, including disclosure of benchmark data, targets, and performance measures; or
  - › The proponent requests adoption of specific energy efficiency goals within specific timelines.

## Renewable Energy

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for requests for reports on the feasibility of developing renewable energy resources unless the report would be duplicative of existing disclosure or irrelevant to the company's line of business.

Generally vote against proposals requesting that the company invest in renewable energy resources. Such decisions are best left to management's evaluation of the feasibility and financial impact that such programs may have on the company.

Generally vote against proposals that call for the adoption of renewable energy goals, taking into account:

- › The scope and structure of the proposal;
- › The company's current level of disclosure on renewable energy use and GHG emissions; and
- › The company's disclosure of policies, practices, and oversight implemented to manage GHG emissions and mitigate climate change risks.

## Diversity

### Board Diversity

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for requests for reports on a company's efforts to diversify the board, unless:
  - › The gender and racial minority representation of the company's board is reasonably inclusive in relation to companies of similar size and business; and
  - › The board already reports on its nominating procedures and gender and racial minority initiatives on the board and within the company.

Vote case-by-case on proposals asking a company to increase the gender and racial minority representation on its board, taking into account:

- › The degree of existing gender and racial minority diversity on the company's board and among its executive officers;
- › The level of gender and racial minority representation that exists at the company's industry peers;
- › The company's established process for addressing gender and racial minority board representation;
- › Whether the proposal includes an overly prescriptive request to amend nominating committee charter language;

- › The independence of the company's nominating committee;
- › Whether the company uses an outside search firm to identify potential director nominees; and
- › Whether the company has had recent controversies, fines, or litigation regarding equal employment practices.

### Equality of Opportunity

▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals requesting a company disclose its diversity policies or initiatives, or proposals requesting disclosure of a company's comprehensive workforce diversity data, including requests for EEO-1 data, unless:

- › The company publicly discloses equal opportunity policies and initiatives in a comprehensive manner;
- › The company already publicly discloses comprehensive workforce diversity data; and
- › The company has no recent significant EEO-related violations or litigation.

Generally vote against proposals seeking information on the diversity efforts of suppliers and service providers. Such requests may pose a significant burden on the company.

### Gender Identity, Sexual Orientation, and Domestic Partner Benefits

▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals seeking to amend a company's EEO statement or diversity policies to prohibit discrimination based on sexual orientation and/or gender identity, unless the change would be unduly burdensome.

Generally vote against proposals to extend company benefits to, or eliminate benefits from, domestic partners. Decisions regarding benefits should be left to the discretion of the company.

### Gender Pay Gap

▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote case-by-case on requests for reports on a company's pay data by gender, or a report on a company's policies and goals to reduce any gender pay gap, taking into account:

- › The company's current policies and disclosure related to both its diversity and inclusion policies and practices and its compensation philosophy and fair and equitable compensation practices;
- › Whether the company has been the subject of recent controversy, litigation, or regulatory actions related to gender pay gap issues; and
- › Whether the company's reporting regarding gender pay gap policies or initiatives is lagging its peers.

## Environment and Sustainability

### Facility and Workplace Safety

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on requests for workplace safety reports, including reports on accident risk reduction efforts, taking into account:

- › The company's current level of disclosure of its workplace health and safety performance data, health and safety management policies, initiatives, and oversight mechanisms;
- › The nature of the company's business, specifically regarding company and employee exposure to health and safety risks;
- › Recent significant controversies, fines, or violations related to workplace health and safety; and
- › The company's workplace health and safety performance relative to industry peers.

Vote case-by-case on resolutions requesting that a company report on safety and/or security risks associated with its operations and/or facilities, considering:

- › The company's compliance with applicable regulations and guidelines;
- › The company's current level of disclosure regarding its security and safety policies, procedures, and compliance monitoring; and
- › The existence of recent, significant violations, fines, or controversy regarding the safety and security of the company's operations and/or facilities.

## General Environmental Proposals and Community Impact Assessments

**General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on requests for reports on policies and/or the potential (community) social and/or environmental impact of company operations, considering:

- › Current disclosure of applicable policies and risk assessment report(s) and risk management procedures;
- › The impact of regulatory non-compliance, litigation, remediation, or reputational loss that may be associated with failure to manage the company's operations in question, including the management of relevant community and stakeholder relations;
- › The nature, purpose, and scope of the company's operations in the specific region(s);
- › The degree to which company policies and procedures are consistent with industry norms; and
- › The scope of the resolution.

## Hydraulic Fracturing

**General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals requesting greater disclosure of a company's (natural gas) hydraulic fracturing operations, including measures the company has taken to manage and mitigate the potential community and environmental impacts of those operations, considering:

- › The company's current level of disclosure of relevant policies and oversight mechanisms;
- › The company's current level of such disclosure relative to its industry peers;
- › Potential relevant local, state, or national regulatory developments; and
- › Controversies, fines, or litigation related to the company's hydraulic fracturing operations.

## Operations in Protected Areas

**General Recommendation:** Generally vote for requests for reports on potential environmental damage as a result of company operations in protected regions, unless:

- › Operations in the specified regions are not permitted by current laws or regulations;
- › The company does not currently have operations or plans to develop operations in these protected regions; or
- › The company's disclosure of its operations and environmental policies in these regions is comparable to industry peers.

## Recycling

**General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to report on an existing recycling program, or adopt a new recycling program, taking into account:

- › The nature of the company's business;
- › The current level of disclosure of the company's existing related programs;
- › The timetable and methods of program implementation prescribed by the proposal;
- › The company's ability to address the issues raised in the proposal; and
- › How the company's recycling programs compare to similar programs of its industry peers.

## Sustainability Reporting

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals requesting that a company report on its policies, initiatives, and oversight mechanisms related to social, economic, and environmental sustainability, unless:
  - › The company already discloses similar information through existing reports or policies such as an environment, health, and safety (EHS) report; a comprehensive code of corporate conduct; and/or a diversity report; or
  - › The company has formally committed to the implementation of a reporting program based on Global Reporting Initiative (GRI) guidelines or a similar standard within a specified time frame.

## Water Issues

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals requesting a company report on, or adopt a new policy on, water-related risks and concerns, taking into account:
  - › The company's current disclosure of relevant policies, initiatives, oversight mechanisms, and water usage metrics;
  - › Whether or not the company's existing water-related policies and practices are consistent with relevant internationally recognized standards and national/local regulations;
  - › The potential financial impact or risk to the company associated with water-related concerns or issues; and
  - › Recent, significant company controversies, fines, or litigation regarding water use by the company and its suppliers.

## General Corporate Issues

### Charitable Contributions

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals restricting a company from making charitable contributions. Charitable contributions are generally useful for assisting worthwhile causes and for creating goodwill in the community. In the absence of bad faith, self-dealing, or gross negligence, management should determine which, and if, contributions are in the best interests of the company.

### Data Security, Privacy, and Internet Issues

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals requesting the disclosure or implementation of data security, privacy, or information access and management policies and procedures, considering:
  - › The level of disclosure of company policies and procedures relating to data security, privacy, freedom of speech, information access and management, and Internet censorship;
  - › Engagement in dialogue with governments or relevant groups with respect to data security, privacy, or the free flow of information on the Internet;
  - › The scope of business involvement and of investment in countries whose governments censor or monitor the Internet and other telecommunications;
  - › Applicable market-specific laws or regulations that may be imposed on the company; and
  - › Controversies, fines, or litigation related to data security, privacy, freedom of speech, or Internet censorship.

## Environmental, Social, and Governance (ESG) Compensation-Related Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to link, or report on linking, executive compensation to sustainability (environmental and social) criteria, considering:
  - › The scope and prescriptive nature of the proposal;

- › Whether the company has significant and/or persistent controversies or regulatory violations regarding social and/or environmental issues;
- › Whether the company has management systems and oversight mechanisms in place regarding its social and environmental performance;
- › The degree to which industry peers have incorporated similar non-financial performance criteria in their executive compensation practices; and
- › The company's current level of disclosure regarding its environmental and social performance.

## Human Rights, Labor Issues, and International Operations

### Human Rights Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals requesting a report on company or company supplier labor and/or human rights standards and policies unless such information is already publicly disclosed.

Vote case-by-case on proposals to implement company or company supplier labor and/or human rights standards and policies, considering:

- › The degree to which existing relevant policies and practices are disclosed;
- › Whether or not existing relevant policies are consistent with internationally recognized standards;
- › Whether company facilities and those of its suppliers are monitored and how;
- › Company participation in fair labor organizations or other internationally recognized human rights initiatives;
- › Scope and nature of business conducted in markets known to have higher risk of workplace labor/human rights abuse;
- › Recent, significant company controversies, fines, or litigation regarding human rights at the company or its suppliers;
- › The scope of the request; and
- › Deviation from industry sector peer company standards and practices.

Vote case-by-case on proposals requesting that a company conduct an assessment of the human rights risks in its operations or in its supply chain, or report on its human rights risk assessment process, considering:

- › The degree to which existing relevant policies and practices are disclosed, including information on the implementation of these policies and any related oversight mechanisms;
- › The company's industry and whether the company or its suppliers operate in countries or areas where there is a history of human rights concerns;
- › Recent significant controversies, fines, or litigation regarding human rights involving the company or its suppliers, and whether the company has taken remedial steps; and
- › Whether the proposal is unduly burdensome or overly prescriptive.

### Operations in High Risk Markets

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on requests for a report on a company's potential financial and reputational risks associated with operations in "high-risk" markets, such as a terrorism-sponsoring state or politically/socially unstable region, taking into account:

- › The nature, purpose, and scope of the operations and business involved that could be affected by social or political disruption;
- › Current disclosure of applicable risk assessment(s) and risk management procedures;
- › Compliance with U.S. sanctions and laws;
- › Consideration of other international policies, standards, and laws; and

- › Whether the company has been recently involved in recent, significant controversies, fines, or litigation related to its operations in "high-risk" markets.

### Outsourcing/Offshoring

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals calling for companies to report on the risks associated with outsourcing/plant closures, considering:

- › Controversies surrounding operations in the relevant market(s);
- › The value of the requested report to shareholders;
- › The company's current level of disclosure of relevant information on outsourcing and plant closure procedures; and
- › The company's existing human rights standards relative to industry peers.

### Weapons and Military Sales

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against reports on foreign military sales or offsets. Such disclosures may involve sensitive and confidential information. Moreover, companies must comply with government controls and reporting on foreign military sales.

Generally vote against proposals asking a company to cease production or report on the risks associated with the use of depleted uranium munitions or nuclear weapons components and delivery systems, including disengaging from current and proposed contracts. Such contracts are monitored by government agencies, serve multiple military and non-military uses, and withdrawal from these contracts could have a negative impact on the company's business.

## Political Activities

### Lobbying

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals requesting information on a company's lobbying (including direct, indirect, and grassroots lobbying) activities, policies, or procedures, considering:

- › The company's current disclosure of relevant lobbying policies, and management and board oversight;
- › The company's disclosure regarding trade associations or other groups that it supports, or is a member of, that engage in lobbying activities; and
- › Recent significant controversies, fines, or litigation regarding the company's lobbying-related activities.

### Political Contributions

▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote for proposals requesting greater disclosure of a company's political contributions and trade association spending policies and activities, considering:

- › The company's policies, and management and board oversight related to its direct political contributions and payments to trade associations or other groups that may be used for political purposes;
- › The company's disclosure regarding its support of, and participation in, trade associations or other groups that may make political contributions; and

- › Recent significant controversies, fines, or litigation related to the company's political contributions or political activities.

Vote against proposals barring a company from making political contributions. Businesses are affected by legislation at the federal, state, and local level; barring political contributions can put the company at a competitive disadvantage.

Vote against proposals to publish in newspapers and other media a company's political contributions. Such publications could present significant cost to the company without providing commensurate value to shareholders.

### Political Ties

 **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against proposals asking a company to affirm political nonpartisanship in the workplace, so long as:

- › There are no recent, significant controversies, fines, or litigation regarding the company's political contributions or trade association spending; and
- › The company has procedures in place to ensure that employee contributions to company-sponsored political action committees (PACs) are strictly voluntary and prohibit coercion.

Vote against proposals asking for a list of company executives, directors, consultants, legal counsels, lobbyists, or investment bankers that have prior government service and whether such service had a bearing on the business of the company. Such a list would be burdensome to prepare without providing any meaningful information to shareholders.

## 8. MUTUAL FUND PROXIES

### Election of Directors

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on the election of directors and trustees, following the same guidelines for uncontested directors for public company shareholder meetings. However, mutual fund boards do not usually have compensation committees, so do not withhold for the lack of this committee.

### Converting Closed-end Fund to Open-end Fund

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on conversion proposals, considering the following factors:
  - › Past performance as a closed-end fund;
  - › Market in which the fund invests;
  - › Measures taken by the board to address the discount; and
  - › Past shareholder activism, board activity, and votes on related proposals.

### Proxy Contests

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proxy contests, considering the following factors:
  - › Past performance relative to its peers;
  - › Market in which the fund invests;
  - › Measures taken by the board to address the issues;
  - › Past shareholder activism, board activity, and votes on related proposals;
  - › Strategy of the incumbents versus the dissidents;
  - › Independence of directors;
  - › Experience and skills of director candidates;
  - › Governance profile of the company;
  - › Evidence of management entrenchment.

### Investment Advisory Agreements

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on investment advisory agreements, considering the following factors:
  - › Proposed and current fee schedules;
  - › Fund category/investment objective;
  - › Performance benchmarks;
  - › Share price performance as compared with peers;
  - › Resulting fees relative to peers;
  - › Assignments (where the advisor undergoes a change of control).

### Approving New Classes or Series of Shares

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for the establishment of new classes or series of shares.

### Preferred Stock Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on the authorization for or increase in preferred shares, considering the following factors:
  - › Stated specific financing purpose;
  - › Possible dilution for common shares;

- › Whether the shares can be used for antitakeover purposes.

### 1940 Act Policies

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on policies under the Investment Advisor Act of 1940, considering the following factors:
  - › Potential competitiveness;
  - › Regulatory developments;
  - › Current and potential returns; and
  - › Current and potential risk.

Generally vote for these amendments as long as the proposed changes do not fundamentally alter the investment focus of the fund and do comply with the current SEC interpretation.

### Changing a Fundamental Restriction to a Nonfundamental Restriction

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to change a fundamental restriction to a non-fundamental restriction, considering the following factors:
  - › The fund's target investments;
  - › The reasons given by the fund for the change; and
  - › The projected impact of the change on the portfolio.

### Change Fundamental Investment Objective to Nonfundamental

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals to change a fund's fundamental investment objective to non-fundamental.

### Name Change Proposals

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on name change proposals, considering the following factors:
  - › Political/economic changes in the target market;
  - › Consolidation in the target market; and
  - › Current asset composition.

### Change in Fund's Subclassification

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on changes in a fund's sub-classification, considering the following factors:
  - › Potential competitiveness;
  - › Current and potential returns;
  - › Risk of concentration;
  - › Consolidation in target industry.

### Business Development Companies—Authorization to Sell Shares of Common Stock at a Price below Net Asset Value

- ▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for proposals authorizing the board to issue shares below Net Asset Value (NAV) if:
  - › The proposal to allow share issuances below NAV has an expiration date no more than one year from the date shareholders approve the underlying proposal, as required under the Investment Company Act of 1940;

- › The sale is deemed to be in the best interests of shareholders by (1) a majority of the company's independent directors and (2) a majority of the company's directors who have no financial interest in the issuance; and
- › The company has demonstrated responsible past use of share issuances by either:
- › Outperforming peers in its 8-digit GICS group as measured by one- and three-year median TSRs; or
- › Providing disclosure that its past share issuances were priced at levels that resulted in only small or moderate discounts to NAV and economic dilution to existing non-participating shareholders.

### Disposition of Assets/Termination/Liquidation

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to dispose of assets, to terminate or liquidate, considering the following factors:

- › Strategies employed to salvage the company;
- › The fund's past performance;
- › The terms of the liquidation.

### Changes to the Charter Document

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on changes to the charter document, considering the following factors:

- › The degree of change implied by the proposal;
- › The efficiencies that could result;
- › The state of incorporation;
- › Regulatory standards and implications.

Vote against any of the following changes:

- › Removal of shareholder approval requirement to reorganize or terminate the trust or any of its series;
- › Removal of shareholder approval requirement for amendments to the new declaration of trust;
- › Removal of shareholder approval requirement to amend the fund's management contract, allowing the contract to be modified by the investment manager and the trust management, as permitted by the 1940 Act;
- › Allow the trustees to impose other fees in addition to sales charges on investment in a fund, such as deferred sales charges and redemption fees that may be imposed upon redemption of a fund's shares;
- › Removal of shareholder approval requirement to engage in and terminate subadvisory arrangements;
- › Removal of shareholder approval requirement to change the domicile of the fund.

### Changing the Domicile of a Fund

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on re-incorporations, considering the following factors:

- › Regulations of both states;
- › Required fundamental policies of both states;
- › The increased flexibility available.

### Authorizing the Board to Hire and Terminate Subadvisers Without Shareholder Approval

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote against proposals authorizing the board to hire or terminate subadvisers without shareholder approval if the investment adviser currently employs only one subadviser.

## Distribution Agreements

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on distribution agreement proposals, considering the following factors:

- › Fees charged to comparably sized funds with similar objectives;
- › The proposed distributor's reputation and past performance;
- › The competitiveness of the fund in the industry;
- › The terms of the agreement.

## Master-Feeder Structure

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote for the establishment of a master-feeder structure.

## Mergers

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on merger proposals, considering the following factors:

- › Resulting fee structure;
- › Performance of both funds;
- › Continuity of management personnel;
- › Changes in corporate governance and their impact on shareholder rights.

## Shareholder Proposals for Mutual Funds

### Establish Director Ownership Requirement

▶ **General Recommendation:** Generally vote against shareholder proposals that mandate a specific minimum amount of stock that directors must own in order to qualify as a director or to remain on the board.

### Reimburse Shareholder for Expenses Incurred

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on shareholder proposals to reimburse proxy solicitation expenses. When supporting the dissidents, vote for the reimbursement of the proxy solicitation expenses.

### Terminate the Investment Advisor

▶ **General Recommendation:** Vote case-by-case on proposals to terminate the investment advisor, considering the following factors:

- › Performance of the fund's Net Asset Value (NAV);
- › The fund's history of shareholder relations;
- › The performance of other funds under the advisor's management.

This document and all of the information contained in it, including without limitation all text, data, graphs, and charts (collectively, the "Information") is the property of Institutional Shareholder Services Inc. (ISS), its subsidiaries, or, in some cases third party suppliers.

The Information has not been submitted to, nor received approval from, the United States Securities and Exchange Commission or any other regulatory body. None of the Information constitutes an offer to sell (or a solicitation of an offer to buy), or a promotion or recommendation of, any security, financial product or other investment vehicle or any trading strategy, and ISS does not endorse, approve, or otherwise express any opinion regarding any issuer, securities, financial products or instruments or trading strategies.

The user of the Information assumes the entire risk of any use it may make or permit to be made of the Information.

ISS MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF ORIGINALITY, ACCURACY, TIMELINESS, NON-INFRINGEMENT, COMPLETENESS, MERCHANTABILITY, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE) WITH RESPECT TO ANY OF THE INFORMATION.

Without limiting any of the foregoing and to the maximum extent permitted by law, in no event shall ISS have any liability regarding any of the Information for any direct, indirect, special, punitive, consequential (including lost profits), or any other damages even if notified of the possibility of such damages. The foregoing shall not exclude or limit any liability that may not by applicable law be excluded or limited.



---

## The Global Leader In Corporate Governance

[www.issgovernance.com](http://www.issgovernance.com)